CHRIST
AND
THE
BIBLE

OR:
Proof that there is no other God
but Jesus Christ

As dictated to
Franz Schumi
1905

Christian-Theosophical Script
Nr. 71

Translated from German to English in 2020

HISTORICAL DATES QUOTED

31 = (spiritual) fall of Adam and Eve (original sin)
919 after the creation of Adam = announcement of the Savior to Pura and Ghemela
1657 after the creation of Adam = 2494 BC end of the flood, promise to Noah of the Messiah
1978 after the creation of Adam = (2173 BC) birth of Abraham
2053 after the creation of Adam = month of October Abraham defeats King Elam
2055 after the creation of Adam = promise to Abraham
2495 BC = 1656 after the creation of Adam the Flood occurred in Georgia
2050 BC = time of Hammurabi king of Babylon (about 600 years before Moses)
1866 BC = Jacob prophesies of the Messiah from the House of Judah (Gen. 49,10)
1458 BC = Moses prophesies about a great prophet (the Messiah) (Deut. 18,15-18)
1451 BC = 2700 after the creation of Adam, for 1043 years Melchizedek is in Salem
1203 BC = prophecy of the Symmachia sibyl on the end of Troy
1194 BC = fall of Troy
1055 BC = David becomes king
1043 BC = January 24 psalm 2 to David
1043 BC = Psalm 22 and 31 and 50 to David on the sharing of garments
1038 BC = the seed of David becomes reality
1036 BC = David prophesies on the 3rd word on the cross (Ps. 22,2)
1028 BC = Nathan prophesies of the Messiah from the house of David
1025 BC = David prophesies on the 'Cornerstone' rejected by the priests (118,22)
743 BC = Isaiah writes 5.24
726 BC = Isaiah prophesies the Messiah who will be born of a virgin (Is. 7:14)
725 BC = Isaiah prophesies the incarnation of God in Jesus (Is. 9,5)
725 BC = Isaiah prophesies the scourging of Jesus (Is. 50,6)
724 BC = Isaiah prophesies about the precursor John the Baptist (Is. 40,3)
723 BC = Isaiah prophesies the passion of Jesus (Is. 50,6 / 53,7)
723 BC = Isaiah prophesies on the 'Cornerstone' (Is. 28,16)
719 BC = Micah indicates the birthplace of the Messiah in Bethlehem (Mic. 5,1)
718 BC = Isaiah prophesies the martyrdom of Jesus and the seventh word from the cross (Is. 53,5 / 45,17)
717 BC = Isaiah prophesies of the cross (46.4 and 4613 and 53.9)
668-626 BC = King Ashurbanipal collects the cuneiform writings from the Babylonian temple
602 BC = Jeremiah prophesies about the slaughter of the innocent (Jer. 31,15)
594-572 BC = Ezekiel chap. 26
578 BC = Ezekiel receives chap. 30
543 BC = Daniel prophesies of the coming Messiah after 458 years
525 BC = Thebes was reduced to ruins by the king of Persia, Cambyses
513 BC = Zechariah prophesies about the blow of a spear to Jesus
500 BC = Zechariah prophesies of Jesus' entry into Jerusalem (Zc. 9,9)
440 BC = Malachi prophesies about John the Baptist (Mal. 3,1-23)

85 BC = Thebes destroyed for the second time by Ptolemy Latiro, Cleopatra's grandfather
25 BC = the historian Strabo visits the cities of Thebes and Memphis
29 BC, 25 October = Virgil's prophecy in the Aeglegola IV, 4 ff
Year 0 (5039) = birth of Jesus after 4120 years after 919 of the promise to Adam
30 AD, June 1 = baptism of Jesus
33 AD, March 21 = triumphal entry of Jesus into Jerusalem
33 AD, March 25 = (i.e. 458 after Daniel's prophecy) - Pontius Pilate's verdict
33 AD, May 7 = publication of the sentence in the Temple
48 AD = Peter writes the 'Letter to the Hebrews'
102 AD, 5 October = letter from Tacitus
132 AD, 6 September = letter from Suetonius
325 AD = Council of Nicaea (dogma of the duality of God)
381 AD = Council of Constantinople (dogma of the trinity of God)
1159 AD, May 11 = false letter from Publius Lentulus
1236 AD = false translation and embellishment of Publius Lentulus's letter
1277 AD = Arab traveler Abd-ul-Latif describes the ruins of Memphis
1280 AD = discovery in L'Aquila of one of the 12 plates of the sentence to Jesus
1854 AD = studies on Nineveh (in present day Kujundschik)



PART 1

Proofs that no other God besides Jesus has ever existed

CHAPTER 1

REASONS FOR THE ORIGIN OF THIS WORK AS GOD'S JUDGEMENT IN THE WORLD

Zurich, 2 August 1904

1. My dear children! With this book, I step before the world, which has almost forgotten that I, its God, Lord, King and Judge of the world, still exists.

2. Through 19 centuries I have dealt with My children in the world with love, forbearance and patience to bring them to the knowledge that a loving Father rules over them, who wishes and does nothing else but good for them. But men have overlooked all this and instead of My ways prescribed by the 10 commandments, they have gone the ways of the abyss or hell.

3. I as God in human form saw this in advance and therefore I prophesied to Caiaphas My return to earth at the time when men will have gone completely astray. This time has now dawned, the clouds have been visible since the year 1840 through the words I speak to My children in books of Christian Theosophy[1] to those who are humble of heart and full of love for Me and neighbour. These few recognize their chief Shepherd Jesus by the voice of love and Divine truth and daily feast on the spiritual food of the table that I set for them.

4. However, very few of these children are still with us, even though a great number of My angels came with Me to earth through reincarnation to work as My messengers and foremen in My vineyard for the millennial kingdom of the Holy Spirit, Who am I, Jesus Jehovah, Myself.

5. Every time-period has its characteristics, therefore it also has Mine: Look at the countries of Europe, how it is now hellishly going on! All of them, with a few exceptions, are Christians by birth, but quite the opposite in their life and action! The ordinary people, the churches, sects, governments and the intelligentsia live contrary to My commandments and teachings in such a way that a whole hell has become of it, which is recognizable for everyone who can see the world spiritually or sees spiritually through clairvoyance.

6. Spiritually, people are no longer people, but snakes, tigers, hyenas and all sorts of other ravenous and dangerous monsters. If they saw themselves spiritually, they would cringe at the nasty spiritual animals that they themselves represent. And all of this comes from the gross and animal vices, desires, lusts, passions, habits and crimes they worship and indulge in.

7. I have let you make so many beautiful inventions to show gratitude towards Me for, but always the opposite happened. So I also let you invent the art of printing, which was the greatest benefit and the greatest invention to spread My Divine religion among all peoples of the earth. And what happened instead? Just the opposite happened: false prophethood is multiplied in all classes and levels of mankind - and above all literature, through which they want to eradicate Me from the hearts of My children!

8. Oh, ye poor worms of the dusty earth! You want to wipe Me out - your God!? You are very much mistaken. Deny Me as you will and do as you please, I remain who I was, am and will be from eternity!

9. I watched for a long time what you write, preach and spread against Me. But finally also My Divine patience and mercy comes to an end, otherwise the human race will perish spiritually

and physically. I have to intervene and supply you with proofs that I actually exist.

10. Behold, this booklet proves My existence historically and through the teaching of Scripture. But the natural, elemental and world-events speak externally that I swing My punitive rod of correction increasingly stronger from year to year over My children who have become evil! But what is the use of all this? People have become blind, deaf and godless and do not see that it is a punishment from God.

11. In 1901 I dictated the book: *"The Holy Trinity"* and had it written and published, in which I made My Divine point of view clear to the rulers, but they did not follow it. On the contrary, Austria - because of the *Holy Trinity* and other books - have mistaken themselves with Me in My writers and put them in the mental asylum, although I have strictly forbidden to lift the smallest finger against My instruments! Yes, if men have become devils, then of course My word is empty talk to them - and so I have decided to eradicate the House of Habsburg completely.

12. And what is to become of the art of printing, since it is mostly used to spread anti-Christian teachings in the church and the state!? Evil is great, hell is getting bigger and bigger because My children - instead of following My teachings to become gods - do the opposite to become evil spirits of hell. I therefore have to destroy the whole art of printing except for the printing of My books and let all printed and that prepared for printing what does not correspond to the truth, disappear and will no longer let anything be printed what is not approved by Me, Jesus Christ. Mankind have made too strong an attack against Me to be able to repair the evil in another way.

13. So I will show you that there is a God who can punish your evil deeds. But also the churches and sects will experience My correctional rod, because there is no Christ-Spirit of love and understanding for My holy word in them! I will for once create order in the world and lead people to the truth of My teaching! Therefore consider these My words as earnest because it is from God, your Creator, Father, King and Judge of the world, and therefore repent while there is still time!

14. But you, My children, strive to spread *this book*, the *Prayer Book* and *Christian Theosophy* (as soon as they are printed) among all people, all classes and religions, because these three books are the most important of all books to lead people on the way of salvation. Only then also the other books can have their turn, because knowing Me, Jesus, who I actually am, praying and living and acting according to My commandments and teachings, is the first and main task of every man - and these three things are clearly set out in these three books.

15. Act according to My words and distribute My books, because that is now your assignment on earth when you one day want to receive the wages for your work from Me.

16. This says your Father Jesus, Amen.

*

1.1 Words of Eternal Truth and the Children of God

1. The words of Eternal Life spring from Eternal Love, Who descended to reveal to mankind the salvation of the soul in its glory, that men can recognize that they do not live isolated like living sprouts of the earth there and pass away after the death of the body like the grass in autumn before the grim cold of the coming winter.

2. Divine Love took pity on people who, like masterless beings, began to think they are masterless, because they began losing the conviction that a loving Father is enthroned above them, who watches over them with His fatherly love from heavenly vision, like a court jeweller watches over his expensive pearls and diamonds, which take up his whole inner life, because he sees in them his well-being and happiness.

3. So I, the heavenly Father, look over the woe and welfare of My children who are in the school of life-testing in the wide universe, because they are partly noble and partly ignoble stones as well as pearls and diamonds in the building of the heavenly Jerusalem, whose builder am I, Jesus Christ - who represents the Eternal Love in the heart of God.

4. Love and life in the heart of the Divine Fatherhood represent mankind, be they good or evil, for the love of the Father embraces them all and slowly but surely, albeit over thorns and thistles, leads their souls to eternal salvation and to eternal life. My love as the eternal Father knows the difference between good and evil people, but no separation from the love of My Fatherly grace and mercy.

5. Years pass and people wander one after the other into the hereafter invisible to fleshly eyes, into the spiritual kingdom of their great and loving Father, where they come to those areas of spiritual life for which they already had their heart and mind set on in this world, so everyone follows his favourite ideas and studies for which he had love and inclination for on earth. Only here in the spirit-realm does everyone recognize the consequences of his desire and love for good or evil, and that is then the good or bad for man, since he reaps good or evil consequences according to his favourite ideas, in which he rejoices and celebrates in his happiness, or mourns, curses and accuses himself and others of the wrong and false ways of life, which he has carelessly passed away and thus forfeited his happiness and heaven, for which sake he entered the school of life on earth.

6. I, the eternal Love in God, certainly do not leave anyone eternally in his misfortune, because according to Holy Scripture, which contains the words of eternal life, there are indeed eternal places of damnation, eternal hellfire and eternal gnashing of teeth through the eternal worm of conscience, but no eternally damned - because eternal love cannot be eternal revenge or God and Satan in one person.

7. It is well known that earthly men father their children only out of love and in this love they will go on and on as long as they live, watching over the welfare and woe of their children, rejoicing over their happiness and mourning over their misfortune and not saving any ways to help their children to overcome the sad fate they have suffered through unhappy conditions and events or through self-caused [circumstances] due to an incorrect way of life, after their ability to make amends, in order to make their loved ones happy again, to bring happiness and prosperity on earth. So if the earthly parents, who hardly have a spark of My Divine, are so worried about and are so loving towards their children and have so much love for their children, how much more will I, who placed you outside of Me into existence - and since you are the members of My Body of the eternal perfection of My 'I', take care of your spiritual and at the same time bodily welfare - because man, as long as he lives on earth, has to take care of both to fulfill the duty that is prescribed to him to live a happy life here for the hereafter.

8. From this you see that the teaching of your churches about eternal damnation is wrong or erroneous. Since I Myself dwell in the heart of your soul as the Spirit of God and give life and intelligence to the soul, it must still be clear to you that I will not condemn Myself for eternity into hell, since without Me, the soul has no life, and as the soul is exactly the life in the human flesh-body, it would immediately become lifeless and therefore insensitive when I would separate Myself from it, and then no more hell could exist for it. The question now is, if the soul wants to become insensitive, who would atone for the tortures of the sins it has committed?

9. So you see that the church doctrine about God is not correct, because the guardians of the church are not true clergymen through a spiritual change of life, but dead letter-riders, who understand and interpret the Holy Scriptures not according to the Spirit that gives life, but according to the letter that brings death.

10. Since the matter is as I have explained it, it will therefore be worthwhile to do a thorough research on this your God-Spirit in the heart of the soul, to know exactly how you stand with the facts about it and where this spark of the great all-encompassing God-Spirit is, not only to believe just because it is taught, but also to get a living conviction from unimpeachable proofs, as world history offers you with prophecies based on the Bible. This will now form the task of the next lectures, so that the world will for once experience that the Spirit of God is nobody else than Jesus Christ, and therefore that exactly My Spirit as Jesus dwells in you and forms the life-giving principle and at the same time also eternal life in you.

*

1.2 Caution and warning by the apostle John, as he understood the Divine Word of Prophecy

1. John the Evangelist, in the last verses, gave the following caution and warning about the words of the prophecy of the Revelation of God:

2. "To every one who hears the words of the prophecy of this book, I testify: If any man would add anything, God will add to him the plagues ... and if any man would take away any of the words of the prophecy of this book (the Revelations of God in the Bible), God will take away his portion of the tree of life and of the holy city of New Jerusalem".

3. This passage of the evangelist overthrows all Christians who are Biblical Christians, and so they themselves become dry brooders over the words of the Bible, from whose dead letters they themselves become spiritually dead according to the statement of the apostle Paul (2 Cor. 3:6-10).

4. If the quoted verses of the evangelist were to be understood materially, you must not have a preacher, a religious teacher, a magazine, a tract and nothing else but only the Bible and teach it exactly word for word as it is printed in it, lest I, Jesus, as your God and Creator and the One who has to watch over the fulfillment of the words of the Bible, am compelled to punish you all without exception and to throw you into hell, because none of you obey the cited caution and warning of the evangelist John, and there the priests, the teachers of religion, the editors of the religious magazines and the writers of the tracts would be before all - so first of all ripe for hell, because so much is misinterpreted, added and taken away.

5. And why do I not punish you because all of you without exception are transgressors of the Bible passage and of the warning of John? Because these verses are to be interpreted spiritually and is not what you think, but what is in them:

6. Adding to the word of prophecy means: interpreting the word according to your own view and discretion of what suits you, thereby twisting the truth and dragging it through the dung.

7. But taking away from the word of prophecy means: not fulfilling the Ten Commandments and the teachings I gave during My three years of teaching, whereby I added an explanatory clarification of the Ten Commandments. Who therefore does not fulfill the conditions demanded in it, it is he who reduce the fullness of My teachings and My commandments - that is to say takes away from them - that is why he distances himself from God as the Tree of Life and so also from the holy city of the community of the blessed - and walks on the broad road that leads to hell.

8. So read the Bible spiritually and live and act according to the words of My prophecy, what it tells you to do or to refrain from doing, then you have done what I demand of you: You are to love Me above everything, but your neighbour as yourselves, thereby strictly fulfill the commandments towards Me, but not to bring spiritual death of the soul out of the dead letters of the Bible!

Schumi comments:

> Those sources and data which appear here as an exception, but are not in the Bible, have been communicated by God to His scribe, because the same God who spoke through prophets, apostles and other people, still exists in the same activity for the good of His children, as it is said: Christ is yesterday, today and in all eternity always the same Father Who lovingly care for His children as He always was.

9. After this introduction we come to the proofs, from which it will clearly emerge what the situation is and what you have to believe to be Divine truth.

CHAPTER 2

EVIDENCE THAT JESUS CONFESSED HIMSELF AS CHRIST OR MESSIAH

Zurich, 17 July 17 1904

1. Among the class of the educated there is a certain spawn of low philosophers who dare to spread all kinds of lies in order to eradicate My Divinity and the dignity and honour of My person. Among them is also this, that I never called Myself Christ or Messiah, and therefore I am not a historical but just a poetic person, that is, I never existed, but I am just a fictional person of the new religious movement of that time. From this one can see the complete ignorance or lack of knowledge of such false prophets, but at the same time their evil will to work against Me to snatch Me out of the heart and mind of My children, which all helpers of Satan - or My antipole – do. But this joy will still bring them bitter times on this and on the other side of the grave so that they will know whom they have stabbed with their wickedness. Now I want to show you some proofs from which you will see that I actually called Myself Christ or Messiah, which means the same as King of the spiritual life or as Prince of Peace, as it is written in Isaiah, namely:

I. When I, Jesus, came to the region of Caesarea-Philippi, I asked My disciples and said, "Who do people say that the Son of Man is? They said, some say John the Baptist, some say Elijah, Jeremiah or one or the other of the prophets. So I asked them: But who do you say that I am? Then Simon Peter answered and said, 'You are Christ, the Son of the living God.' And I, Jesus, affirmed that I really am Christ or [the] Messiah by saying it and by publicly blessing Peter for this statement: Blessed are you Simon, son of Jonah! For this has not revealed to you by flesh and blood (that is, the fleshly brain), but My Father (that is, My love) in heaven (of your heart that loves Me). But since the Messiah was understood to be their mighty God Jehovah, I forbade My disciples to broadcast this truth to the people, because the Jews living in sin would have repented in sackcloth and ashes in fear and terror - for through this knowledge, they would have been slavishly suppressed in their spiritual freedom of mind. God-loving people have not been harmed by this knowledge. (Matt 16:13-17; Mark 8:29; Luke 9:20)

II. In My teaching days, when I first came to Nazareth with My disciples, I went to the synagogue or Jewish school, because it was the Sabbath. I demanded to read, whereupon I was given the scroll of the prophet Isaiah. When I rolled it open, I found the exact place where I wanted to be, where it is written: "The spirit of the Lord is upon Me! That is why He has anointed Me (or made Me the Messiah) to preach the Gospel to the poor. He has sent Me to heal the pressed hearts, to release the prisoners (in spiritual darkness), to preach the sight (of truth) to the blind (in spirit). The bound (in spiritual stultification) into freedom (of the teaching of God); and to proclaim the gracious year of the Lord (as the reunion of the children with their Father), and to proclaim the day of retribution (against false teachers of religion by spreading the truth about the Word of God). And when I folded the roll, I said to My listeners: "Today this scripture is fulfilled before your eyes", with which I openly confessed: I am the Messiah of whom Isaiah here speaks. (Luke 4:16-21)

III. I confessed and said freely to the Samaritan woman at Jacob's well: I am the Messiah who speaks to you. (John 4:25-26)

IV. In My correctional sermon against the teachers of the Scriptures and Pharisees, I said to the people and My disciples: "Do not let yourselves be called teachers[3] (nowadays they say for this: 'Doctor', 'theologian'), because one is your Teacher, namely Christ. (Matt 23:10) When I, Jesus, spoke of Christ as Teacher, then it should be obvious that I meant Myself as Christ, as also the following message tells you.

V. When I prophesied about the destruction of Jerusalem, I told My disciples about the future false Christs by saying: "Many will appear under My name and say: I am Christ, and will mislead many. (Matt 24:5,23,24)

VI. When the High Priest Caiaphas presented Me with the question of whether I am [the] Messiah[1], the Son of the living God (proof of the reason for this question can be read here in chapter 10), I reassured him that I am, by answering him: “You say it” - that is - I do not deny it, because it is so, and then I emphasized My short answer with a powerful and decisive prophecy about the return of Christ and said: “But I tell you: From now on it will happen that you will see the Son of Man (that is, the great prophet of whom Moses prophesied - Deut 18:18.) sitting at the right hand of the power of God, coming in the clouds of heaven.” [2] (The clouds of heaven are the presently printed words of God of *Christian Theosophy*; Matt 26:63-64; Mark 14:61-62)

VII. In the high prayer that I spoke at the Last Supper, I said, "This is eternal life, that they may know You, the only true God, and Him whom You have sent, namely Me, Jesus Christ, Who went out from You.” (John 17:3-8)

VIII. According to the Old Testament way of speaking, the Anointed, Christ or Messiah, meant 'King', as the future Messiah is mentioned several times in the Bible by this term, and that this was aimed at Me, Jesus Christ, I, Jesus Myself affirmed before Pilate that I am King, but that My Kingdom is not of this world. (Matt 27:11; Mark 15; John 18,33-37). Yes, even more - I as the Anointed Myself, that is Christ or King, rode on March 21st in [the year] 33 under songs of praise of Hosannas and Hallelujahs by the people, into Jerusalem - (John 12:13; Mark 11:9; Matt 21:9) and yet they dare to boldly assert that Jesus never called Himself Christ. This is why the Pharisees with their followers mocked Me on the cross, saying: "Come down, if You are the King of the Jews, we will believe in You" (Matt 27:42; Mark 15:32).

IX. After My resurrection, I accompanied two of My disciples, Cleophas and Barsabas Justus, who went to Emmaus, unrecognised - and spoke of Myself: Did not Christ have to suffer this to reach His glory?

X. And when I came in the evening among the assembled disciples, I said: "This is what is written in the prophets, and this is how (I as) Christ had to suffer and rise from the dead on the third day (Luke 24:13-46).

CHAPTER 3

Synoptic and Synchronistic Sources

1. As for the sources of My story, they come from My eyewitnesses and contemporaries who recorded them, namely My disciples:

2. **(1)** John and **(2)** Matthew, the evangelists, as synoptists or eye-witnesses. Only Matthew went to India and took his original gospel with him. **(3)** Mark, the son of Peter and **(4)** Luke, the doctor.

3. Besides these four, there is the pseudo-Matthew named Rabbas, a writer from Sidon, who compiled the existing copies and what was told by the people and published them as the Gospel of Matthew. For more details, see the treatise on the origin of the Gospels, which follows in Chapter IV.

4. Besides these 5 evangelists, there are also the epistles of Peter, Paul, Jacob [James], Judas and John, that is to say 9 disciples and contemporaries, who wrote at the time when everything was still alive in the minds of the people, including 6 eye-witnesses.

5. These many proofs of My existence as Christ, as handed down synoptically or synchronistically or by eye-witnesses and contemporaries, prove that today's denials of My existence as Christ and the authenticity of the evangelical and apostolic news, are based on malicious people deliberately destroying the truth, dating from the days of Adam to the year 132 AD. As darkness only exists until the light destroys it, so also the dark lie spreads until the Divine light of truth arises and illuminates the lie for what it is.

6. A highly important proof of the existence of the apostle John for you - since people also deny the existence of all apostles and evangelists and makes allegorical pictures of the spirit of the age out of their names - is the Revelation of John, which is the most living witness of a spiritual language of correspondence, which was not spoken either in the time of the apostles or later on earth, and which encompasses the religious history of future times of the world in spiritual-heavenly correspondence.

7. Another such great evidence from the first centuries, such as that cited here, is the Christ-denying historical narrative from the 18th, 19th and 20th century without any basic support or value - for without any proof to the contrary, something is claimed that is just grabbed from the air. How is it possible to eliminate a truth by mere denial, that has been proclaimed to you for 6000 years, proven by patriarchs, prophets and apostles, without pointing to just as much counter-evidence with the originals or even guaranteed news from the first century!

8. Not today, from the time of dark denial of God and from your time of fogging the mind for truth, the unproven negations of all truth are decisive for you - but they must come from the sources of the time of the apostles or of the first century, but not want to assert something after almost 2000 years, which only presents itself as malice, bad will, spiritual darkness, ignorance in Biblical science, deliberate negation of truth and prophecy of lies against a stream of truthful proofs from the time of My existence as Christ. Therefore, do not be misled by the false prophets and false Christs of the present, because they are in the service of the adversary of My Deity who is called the destroyer of mankind and whose ground is the abyss of hell where he draws his believers after he has robbed them of the salvation of their souls with him into the depth of darkness of spiritual life.

CHAPTER 4

Prophecies from Pagan, Jewish and Christian writers about Jesus Christ

1. It is a little known fact that - besides My disciples - also Jewish and Gentile writers recorded news about My past, which now serve to prove the opposite to the deniers of God, critics of the Bible and eradicators of Christ.

2. There must be light one day! To fight against Me, your God, is to lick against the sting. Oh, you poor earthworms of the prodigal son, how will you stand against Me, God, in your struggle? Your arrows do not hit Me, but you hit yourselves, because the more you rage for My elimination, the more darkly hell prepares itself that will take you in after your passing away. But do not believe that that will be the end of it all! Oh, no! Your disgrace and suffering will be terrible, so you had better abandon your infernal activities betimes, so as not to become completely unhappy!

*

4.1 Prophecy of the Cibylle of Eritrea

Graz, 23.July.1904

3. The Cibylle were clairvoyant women who were often shown visions of the future - as is still the case with clairvoyants today - and hence the prophecy of the coming Messiah, whom the Eritrean Cibylle foresaw in spirit as a child and then as a teaching young man.

4. Symmachia, this Cibyl, was born in Eritrea in the Greek landscape of Boeotia and prophesied to Cumae[3] in Campagnie in 1203 before Christ. When the Greeks moved to Troy in 1194 before Christ, she also prophesied its downfall. Both prophesied in Cuma[3] in Campania in the year 1203 BC When the Greeks went to Troy in 1194 BC, she also prophesied her fall.

5. Text of the two prophecies of the Sibyl of Eritrea about the coming of Jesus Christ:

I. I see the Son of God Who has come down from on high. Whom a Hebrew virgin of a noble lineage will bear when the last happy times come. In His tender years, He will suffer much on earth. But this prophet will be great in Divine prophecy, Who is born of a virgin mother and is wise and true.

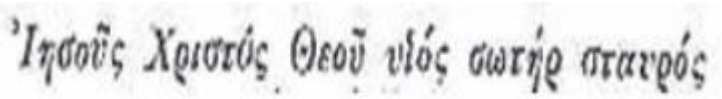
II. There will come a messenger from heaven who will delight the world with the true knowledge of God; for I saw a child come down from heaven and grow up among the people, then I saw Him teaching in the temple as a young man and making great speeches to the people. I saw Him heal many sick people and teach people to love God and the neighbour and thus spread only Divine things on earth, whereby a golden age could dawn when people would hear him and follow his Divine teaching. But people went away from this great Son from heaven and preferred to live according to their worldly will, so I saw how this Light-Spirit left the world and went up to heaven again, from where He

came down". (This once burnt prophecy was reproduced on 23.6.1904 by F. Sch. as given by Father Jesus)

*

4.2 Prophecy about the Future names of Jesus through the Cibylle of Eritrea

6. At the **Council of Nicaea (325), Constantine the Great** solemnly declared: "The Eritrean Cibylle was certainly influenced by God to proclaim what was to happen, by also clearly stating the story of the coming of Jesus Christ in that confluence of the first two letters of the verses are acrostic. It contains the following words:[4]



that is:

Jesus Christ, Son of God, Saviour, Cross[5]

About the Cibyllic books and their destruction, read in Ritter v. Vesme, *Geschichte des Spiritismus, volume 1*.

*

4.3 Vergil's[6] Prophecy about the coming of Jesus Christ

(From Ritter v. Vesme, Gesch. des Spiritismus 1, 365, Publius Vergilius Maro, born 70 in Andes, in a village near Mantua, † 22 September 19 BC in Brundusium (Brindisi); he ended the eclogues between 27-25 before Christ)

7. Year 29 B.C., October 25th, Rome: "Already the last age of the **Cumaean prophecy** is rushing by, and a great number of centuries are beginning anew. The virgin[7] (Dike, daughter of Zeus and Themis [goddess of justice], who lived on earth in the golden age under the rule of Saturn [Cronus, father of Zeus], but who is said to have taken refuge in heaven with the beginning of the Iron Age, where she was called Astrea [the starry virgin] or Virgio [the virgin] as a constellation; again, the kingdoms of Saturn return, and a new offspring is sent down from the high heaven. You chaste Lucina[8] (Lucina, common nickname of the goddess of marriage Juno [who brings the children to the light of the world] as well as often the nickname Diana [the sister of Apollo], the goddess of the moon, of hunting, goddess of nature and protector of births, invoked by the women in childbed to protect the young children) of the nascent child, through whom first the iron age will die and the golden age will rise in the whole world; your Apollo already rules. And it is with you, under your consulate, Oh Pollio[9], that this glorious time will commence, and these great months will begin to appear. (Virgil's prophecy[10] in Ecloga IV, 4 ff.

whose identical Latin original reads as follows:

> Ultima Cumaei venit jam carminis aetas;
> Magnus ab integro saeclorum nascitur ordo.
> Jam redit et Virgo, redeunt Saturnia regna;
> Jam nova progenies coelo demittitur alto.
> Tu modo nascenti puero, quo ferrea primum
> Desinet ac toto surget gens aurea mundo,
> Casta fave Lucina; tuus jam regnat Apollo. T
> eque adeo decus hoc aevi, te consule,
> inibit, Pollio, et incipient magni procedere menses...
>
> **Translation:**
>
> "Already the last epoch of the Cumaean prophecy comes,
> a great order of centuries begins anew;
> the formerly virgin returns, the kingdoms of Saturn return;
> a new shoot is brought down from heaven.
> You, or chaste Lucina, protect the nascent child
> through which the Iron Age will end,
> and all over the world will rise that of gold, your Apollo already rules. And just under your advice, Pollio,
> this shining era will begin, and the great months will begin to appear ... ".

8. What the Roman poet Virgil sang in *Eclogues* about a heavenly offspring Who will establish the golden age, happened under the influence of the Cumaean prophecy of the idea of the coming of the Messiah generally supported by Jews. This poetic prophecy, although interwoven with pagan mythology, nevertheless belongs among the Christian historical sources.

*

4.4 Reports of Roman Historians about the Coming of the Messiah from the Prophecies

9. Tacitus (year 102, on 5 October, Rome). Hist. 13 says (like Sueton Vespasian 4): It was claimed that at that time, the Orient would come to rule and that out of Judea there would arise someone who would subjugate the whole world.

10. Sueton (year 132, 6 September, Rome), says in Vespasian 4: "There is an ancient and constant view throughout the Orient that it was destined that one should come to Judea at that time who would be master of the whole world.

CHAPTER 5

THE PHARISEE JOSEPHUS[11] REPORTS (IN 72 AD) ABOUT THE DEATH OF JOHN THE BAPTIST

1. In the year 30 Aretas, the king of Petraean Arabia, fought against King Herod Agrippa II because the latter had rejected his wife, the daughter of Aretas, and destroyed all his power.

*

Cited by Schumi from Flavius Josephus, *Jewish Antiquities* Book 18, chapter 5, verse 1,2:

> "Some of the Jews, however, recognized in the downfall of Herod's armies, the providence of the Lord, who demanded a just punishment of Herod for John the Baptist. Herod had him executed, although he was a righteous man and urged the Jews to strive for the virtue of practicing righteousness towards their neighbours and piety towards God, and thus to come to baptism[12]; then baptism will be pleasing to God, using it only for the sanctification of the body, not for the cleansing of sin of the soul, which is then already sanctified by a just life. (Actually, healing, strengthening of the body.)
>
> John was - after the reproach about Herod's adulterous life (John's baptism was an external ceremonial announcement that the baptized person was thereby making atonement for the forgiveness of sins. Luke 3:3) put in chains by him, sent to the feast of Macharaeus and beheaded there (because of the known cause with Herodias). But his death was, according to the conviction of the Jews (who took John for a prophet, (Matt 14:1-11; 21:26) the reason why Herod's army had fallen victim to the wrath of God.

CHAPTER 6

THE TRADITIONAL COMPILATION OF THE DESCRIPTION OF THE PERSON OF CHRIST

1. Father Jesus tells: In 1159, May 15 in Alexandria, a monk named Jacob in the monastery at Alexandria in Egypt compiled the description of Me as it has been preserved in popular tradition until then - and, in order to provide authorship[13] for the truth of it, places it under the authority of a fictional person named Publius Lentulus, as governor of Judea[14] in the time of Jesus. He says:

2. Publius Lentulus writes the following letter to the Senate and the Roman people:

3. In those days a very virtuous man appeared, named Jesus Christ, who still lives among us and is called a prophet of truth by the people, but a son of God by his own disciples. He raises the dead and heals all kinds of diseases. A man of somewhat large and stately figure and venerable appearance, so that those who see him can both love him and fear him. His hair is the color of a completely ripe hazelnut, smooth up to the ears, but curled from there downwards, somewhat dark and shiny, flowing over his shoulders, parted in the middle according to the custom of the Nazarenes. His forehead is smooth and open, his face without wrinkles or any spots, being of a lovely moderate redness. His nose and mouth are so shaped that there is nothing to blame. The beard is abundantly thick, of the same colour as the hair, not long, but divided in two in the middle. His look is simple and manly. The eyes are blue-grey and clear. In rebuke He is terrible, in admonition He is kind and loving, He is cheerful but serious. You never saw Him laugh, but you often saw Him cry. His body is well formed and firm. His hands and arms are well-proportioned to the body. In speech He is serious, wise and humble. A man of peculiar beauty of form, surpassing the children of men.

4. Now follow three Latin copies of the same original of the tradition, and each is different and none is faithfully copied from the original. All three copies follow below, so that the critics of the Gospels and the Holy Scriptures should reflect on how superficial the former writers were, which can also be seen especially in the Greek and Latin New Testament, both of which were written down from the same scriptures and at the same time, and yet show such gigantic deviations as these three copies show, - yes, one could say even greater ones. - Why then the big worthless study without knowing the reasons why this or that?!

\- - -

First copy:

> Publius Lentulo in Giudea praeses (tempore Cesaris) senati populoque – Romano hanc epistolam misit: “Apparuit temporibus istis nostris, et adhuc est, homo magnae virtutis, cui nomen Jesus Christus, qui a gente dicitur propheta ueritatis; et a suis discipulis filius Dei. Suscitans mortuos et sanans omnes languores. Homo quidam statura procerus et spectabilis. Vultum habens uenerabilem quam intuentes facile possunt dirigere et formidare. Capillos habens coloris nucis auellane prematura et planos usque ad aures; ab auribus uero’crispos aliquantulum coeruliores et fulgentiores; ab humeris uentilantes. Discrimen habens in medio capite iuxta morem Nazareorum. Frontem planam serenissimam cum facie sine ruga aliqua, quam rubor moderatus venustas. Nasi et oris nulla prorsus reprehensio. Barbam habens copiosam et capillis concolorern, non longam, sed in medio birucatam. Aspectum simplicem et

maturum, oculis claucis uariis et claris. In increpatione terribilis, in admonitione blandus et amabilis. Hilaris quidam seruata gravitate. Nunquam uisus ridere, flere autem sepe. In statura corporis propagatus et rictus. Manus habens in brachia uisu desertabilia (delectabilia!). In colloquio gratis, rarus et modestus. Forma certe speciosus prae filiis hominum".

Translation:

"Publius Lentulus governor in Judea (at the time of Caesar), sent this letter to the Senate and to the people of Rome: "He appeared in our time and is still alive, a man of great virtue, called Jesus Christ who is indicated by the people ' the prophet of truth ', and by his disciples' son of God'. He raises the dead and heals any disease. A man of the right stature and good-looking. His face, looking at it, is venerable to be admired easily and feared. His hair is the color of a ripe hazelnut and smooth to the ears; instead the hair that falls on his shoulders is a little curly and brighter and shinier. A line divides them in the middle of the head, according to the custom of the Nazarenes. His forehead is flat with a smooth, wrinkle-free face, plus a slight blush that makes it pleasant to look at. Nothing to say about his nose and mouth. He has a thick, reddish beard the same color as his hair, not long but parted. His appearance is simple and mature with his eyes just closed and bright. Terrible in reproaching, meek and amiable in admonishing. Cheerful but supported by a reserved gravity. He was never seen laughing, but often crying. The stature of his body is tall and upright. He has nice hands and limbs; pleasant in expression, humble and modest. The appearance is certainly beautiful, compared to the children of men."

6. This report of Publius Lentulus on Jesus, so far the best edited by J. Ph. Gabler (Small theological writings, vol. II, 1831, p. 636, sq;) is found in the cod. Harleianus 2729, saec. XII, which otherwise Frontins strategemata and Eutrop, on a front glued Sheet from a hand of the XV century thus: as above the recording is Latin.

[Communicated by Dr. phil. Gotthold Gundermann
in the Journal for scientific theology
by Dr. Adolf Hilgenfeld, 1886, Page 241.]

Second copy:

Lentuli epistola ad imperatorem Tyberium: "Apparuit his temporibus et adhuc est, homo magnae uirtutis, nominatus Christus Jesus, qui dicitur à gentibus propheta, quern eius discipuli uocant filius Dei. Suscitans mortuos et sanans omnes languores; homo staturae procerae, mediocris et spectabilis, uultum habens uenerabilem, quem intuentes possunt formidare et diligere. Capillos habet coloris nucis auellanae praematurae, et planos ferè usque ad aures. Ab auribus cuntanos crispos aliquanto, caeruleores et subgemiores ab humeris uentilantes, discrimen habens in medio capitis, iuxta morem Nazaraeorum; frontem planam et serenissimam cum facie sine ruga aut macula aliqua, quem rubor moderatus uenustat Nasi et oris nulla reprehensio. Barbam habet copiosarn et impuberem, capillis con colorem, non longam, sed in medio bifurcatam. Aspectum habet simplicem et maturum, oculis claris existentibus. Increpatione terribilis, in admonitione blandus et amabilis, hilaris seruata grauitate; qui nunquam ridere, flere autem saepe uisus est. In statura. corporis propagatus rectus. Manus habet et brachia uisu delectabilia; in colloquio rarus et modestus, speciosus inter filium hominum."

[Apokrypha hoc est nattiones de Cristo,
extra Biblia apud Patres reperta. Gr. Et lat.
Protevangelion Jacobi grasce primum editum etc.
Cur Michael Neander 8, Basel 1567, page 410-411]

Translation:

“He appeared in our time and still lives; a man of great virtues, called Jesus Christ who, by the people, is called a prophet, and by his disciples referred to as the son of God. He raises the dead and heals all diseases. A man of tall stature and mediocre (moderate) in his appearance, with a venerable face that, looking at him, compels one to admire and fear him. His hair is an unripe hazelnut or almond color, smooth to the ears. From these, they become a little light-tinged curls that cover the shoulders, with a line that divides them in the middle of the head, according to the custom of the Nazarenes. His forehead is flat and serene with a face without wrinkles or imperfections, the slight redness of which enhances the unobjectionable nose and mouth. He has a thick, mature beard, the same color as his hair, not long but parted in the middle. His appearance is simple and mature, with bright eyes, terrible in reproach, kind and lovable if he warns you, joyful and with a reserved gravity, that he was never seen laughing, but often crying. So elevated in the height of the body, he has pleasant hands and limbs; agreeable and modest in conversation, handsome among the children of men "".

Third copy:

"Lentulo hierosolymitanorm praeses S. (enatui) P. Q. (ue. Roinano S. (cripsit): “Apparuit temporibus nostris, et adhuc est homo magnae virtutis, nominatus Christus Jesus, qui dicitur a gentibus propheta ueritatis, quem eius discipuli uocant filium Dei. Suscitans mortuos, et sanans languores. Homo quidam staturae procedere, spectabilis, uultum habens uenerabilem, quem intuentes possunt et dirigere et formidare. Capillos uerò circinos et crispos aliquantulum ceruliores et fulgentiores, ad himeris uolitantes, discrimen habens in medio capitis, iuxta morem Nazarennorum. Frontem planam et serenissimam cum facie sine ruga, macula aliqua, quam rubor modratus uenustat. Nasi et oris nulla prorsus est repehensio, barbam habens copiosam et rubram capllorium colore, non longam, se bifurcatam. Oculis uariis et claris existentibus, In increpatione terribilis, in admonitione placidus et amabilis, hilaris, seruata gravitate, qui nunquam uisus est ridere, flere autem saepe. Sic in statura corporis propagatus, manes habens et mebra uisu delsctabilia, in eloquio gratis, rarus et modestus, speciosus inter filios hominum”. Valete.

Monumenta sanctorum patrum orthodoxographa, colectore Joh.;
Jac. Gryyuaeo. Brasileae 1569. Sub:
Epistolae orthodoxographorum Theologorum latinorum. pag. 1

Translation:

"Lentulo governor in Jerusalem (enatui) P. Q. (ue. Roinano S. (cripsit):" He appeared in our time, and is a man of great virtues, called Jesus Christ who, by the Gentiles is called a prophet of truth, and by his disciples is called the son of God who raises the dead and heals the sick. A man of a certain stature, tall and tall, with a venerable face who, looking at him, is forced to fear him. Hair up to his neck is curly. and a little lighter and brighter those that fall on the shoulders, having a line in the middle of the head, according to the custom of the Nazarenes. A smooth and serene forehead with a face without wrinkles, nor any imperfections, favored by a slight blush . Nothing to say about the nose and mouth, having a thick and reddish beard, not long, but forked. The clear and luminous eyes terrible in the reproach, meek and lovable in the admonition, joyful and of a respected dignity, having never seen him laugh, but cry often So high in the s tature of the body having pleasant limbs, pleasant in bearing, humble and modest in expression, special among the children of men "".

CHAPTER 7

A DEMONSTRATION OF INCORRECT TRANSCRIPTIONS of THE DESCRIPTION OF THE FIGURE OF CHRIST

Zurich, 25 June 1904

1. I, Jesus, after the first of June in the year 30 (according to the presumed calculation of time) I was baptized by John the Baptist and I gathered around Me My disciples, appeared and began to preach. But now it is not My task to tell you how I spread My teaching, but what I looked like as a Man and how I was spiritually constituted.

2. My appearance was at the same time the model for the curious as to how I looked, who I was and what was said about Me, so much so that My person became generally known, and this verbal description remained existing even after My ascent to Heaven, from which the oral tradition was formed which remained among the people, however never transcribed, being too well known. Afterwards, however, some infractions crept in, and it is to remove them that I now want to communicate the truth to you.

3. It was in the year 1159 that a monk named Jacob (see chapter 6), in the convent of Alexandria in Egypt, described Me according to how the tradition about Me had been transmitted among the people. This tradition or verbal transmission was later used by a worldly narrator in Rome, to whom it seemed too simple; therefore in the year 1236, he made a translation of the description of My person with various embellishments, a description that is found in the noble family of the Cesarini in Rome and of which a free translation in German has been printed, of which an example of how forgeries are created, follows:

4. Publius Lentulus, governor (praetor) of Judea[15] to Emperor Tiberius.

> "I have heard, Oh Caesar, that you wish to know what I have told you here. The man you are asking me about lives here in great esteem and is called Jesus Christ. The people call him a prophet, but his disciples consider him the Son of God, the Creator of heaven and earth and of all things that are and were in the world. Truly, Oh Caesar, miraculous things are heard about Christ every day. He brings the dead back to life, he heals the sick with just one word. He is of medium stature and very beautiful in face. His face is so majestic that those who see him must love and fear him. His hair is the colour of a very ripe hazelnut and is combed smooth up to the ears, but from the ears down it is earth-coloured or even lighter. He has, in the manner of the Nazarenes, parted the hair in the middle. The forehead is even and open, the cheeks smooth, without rungs and moulded in seriousness. The nose and mouth are regular. His beard is thick, like the hair, but not long and parted in the middle. His gaze is grave and piercing; his eyes are like the rays of the sun, so that no-one can look into them because of their brilliance. When he threatens, he arouses fear; when he exhorts, he attracts. He's cheerful too, but with dignity. They say no-one has ever seen him neither laugh nor cry. His hands and arms are very beautiful. His speeches are very satisfying to the listeners. You rarely see him, but when you do, he's very serious. By reputation He is the most beautiful man you can see or imagine. His mother is considered the most beautiful woman in this country. If Your Majesty, Oh Caesar, wishes to see it, as You wrote me earlier, let me know and I will send it to you at once. His teachings have the admiration of all Jerusalem. He has never learned anything, but knows all the teachings by heart. He walks barefoot and bareheaded. Many laugh at Him, but

those who hear Him teach, admire Him and tremble before Him. It is said that such a person has never been seen or heard in this region. As the Jews tell me, nobody has ever given such wise advice as this Jesus Christ. Many Jews regard Him as a God and believe in Him; but there are also many who accuse Him to me of being an adversary of Your Majesty. I already dislike these evil-doing Jews. It is claimed that He has not yet done evil to anyone, but has done good to many. Given at Jerusalem in the seventh indent of the eleventh month. Your Majesty's most loyal and obedient governor of Judea, Publius Lentulus.

*

5. To this falsification I want to mention to you only so much that there never was a governor[16] Publius Lentulus of Judea or Praeses Hierosolimitanorum, that Pontius Pilate was from the beginning of the year 29 to the year 36 Praetor or governor of Lower Galilee, under which also Judea belonged and that the seventh indication[17] belongs to the year 34, in which year I was not in the world. Also, at that time there was no calculation according to indications, because these were introduced later. Also the term "*majesty*" was not yet common practice for Roman emperors at that time.

6. After I gave you all proofs that both originals were falsifications and only present tradition as it was preserved in the people, I now want to give you a truthful revelation about My person:

7. I Jesus Christ, was a virtuous man, as one will not think differently of Me as God in human form. I was called by the people “the great prophet of whom Moses prophesied”; My disciples called Me Lord, Master and Son of God. I raised the dead and healed all diseases. My height was 180 centimetres and I was a stately figure, because the body was formed without flaws. My appearance was very venerable, because My certain seriousness, combined with a loving kindness, impressed everyone, so that the friends loved Me very much; but the enemies, whom I looked at with majestic seriousness, sometimes felt a fear and trembling before Me. My hair was dark yellow-red, but shining like a silky lustre and tender like a young man's hair growing in the most luxuriant youthful freshness. How beautiful such shiny and luxuriant hair is, you cannot really imagine, because you cannot see it anywhere nowadays. Above, from the top of the head to the ears it was smooth with a very small wavy interruption, from the ears downwards it started to curl in waves and fell down in the most beautiful curls from the shoulders to the middle of the back. People admired this unusual beauty of My hair, which was divided at the crown into two parts, flowing down from the head, as the hair fashion of the Nazarenes and Galileans was then. My forehead was high and smooth and like My face without spots and wrinkles, which had a pleasant reddish, though fine and delicate skin, having had a smooth, young appearance that was lovely to look at. An oriental beautifully formed nose without a deep indentation at the eyes and a lip-mouth corresponding to all requirements of the painter's sense of beauty adorned My face. My beard was neither too strong nor too weak, but in quite the right adaptation as it must be in the best shape for a handsome man, its colour was the same as the hair; it was not long, but growing beautifully, divided in two in the middle and well cared for. My look was simple, engaging and friendly, though never laughing. My eyes were neither large nor small, but sharply shining, surrounded by beautiful blue-grey colour with beautiful clear white. When I rebuked, I was very serious, and My piercing gaze drove the enemies into a corner, so that they ran away quickly; in admonishing I was kind and loving, though keeping the necessary seriousness. I was never seen laughing from My 12th year on, for that was when My spiritual training of the character of mind began, which otherwise, unlike the Spirit of God's love in the heart, is called the Spirit of Man (Romans 8:15-16; -*Disclosures I*, pp. 107-109); I have never cried, but I was sad at times because of the obduracy of the Pharisees and their followers; but tears in the eyes of an adult without moaning and crying, (Luke 19:41; John 11:33; 3rd Hebrews 5:7 - Although Peter mistakenly thought of Gethsemane

in the Epistle to the Hebrews - said this.) is not crying! My hands and arms were adequately and well proportioned to the shape of My body.

8. In conversations with persons I was serious, wise, decisive, yet always modest, preserving My dignity; in public lectures I was serious, calm, with a majestic sounding voice, powerfully performing and proving in expression. That My outer appearance as God in human form, as it possessed all perfections, as once that of Adam, whom I also formed in the image of My 'I', certainly surpassed all human children through this peculiar beauty, you can easily imagine, therefore the description of the people was traditionally preserved so well into the twelfth century, since they regarded Me as a miracle-man and made comments about Me everywhere. In the summer I walked barefoot and with My head always uncovered, because that is how all poor people walked in those days. No tradition was preserved about Mary, yet it is true that she had a very beautiful appearance, but she was not the most beautiful woman in Palestine.

CHAPTER 8

The profile of the face of Jesus

1. About this matter, there is a profile of My face which was once engraved on an emerald, of which the following false story is told:

2. "The only true image of our Savior is imprinted in an engraving on an emerald by order of the Emperor Tiberius (reigning in 14-37 after the birth of Christ) and delivered by the treasury of Constantinople through the Sultan of the Turks to Pope Innocent VIII (regent 1484-1492), for the ransom of his brother who was then a prisoner of Christians ".

*

3. The image in question is an emerald cut which was made by an emerald cutter in Rome in 1236, partly according to the description of My person according to the manuscript found in the noble family of Cesarini in Rome, and partly according to the ancient coin from Elis which represents Zeus of Phidias at Olympia.

4. When the pious Phidias chiselled the statue of Zeus for Olympia, he sought the true God in his spirit, and I had My features approximated. Now when, after the completion of his sublime statue of Zeus on Olympus, he called "the Father of gods and men", as the truthful legend tells us, and asked for a sign whether this image pleased Me, I gave him the answer by a lightning bolt out of the blue, which went into the floor of the temple. (For more details see "*Love"* 1, page 106).

5. The picture cut in emerald and transferred to paper is certainly very dissimilar to My true countenance, whereas the new picture, again given in the spirit of a draughtsman, is quite similar to the original as I looked like during My apprenticeship (years 30-33). This picture is from the Christian-Theosophical trade.

CHAPTER 9

The Death Sentence by Pontius Pilate in year 33 on 25 March

1. In addition to the contemporary records of My life, teachings and deeds, the German [English - Translator] wording according to the original Latin[18] judgement of Pontius Pilate shall follow here for the first time:

JUDGEMENT

Judge: Pronounced by Pontius Pilate [19], governor of the Lower Galilee.

Sentence: Jesus of Nazareth must suffer death on the cross.

2. In the seventeenth year of Emperor Tiberius, on the 25th day of March, in the holy city of Jerusalem, at the time of Hanna, priest, and Caiaphas, high priest of God:

3. *I, Pontius Pilate, governor of Lower Galilee, sitting in the Praetor's presidential chair, condemn Jesus of Nazareth to die on a cross between two thieves, because the high council of the temple so decided; but I found him guilty of no crime under our Roman laws, therefore he is not condemned by me under our laws, but by the will of the temple priesthood, which accused him of all sorts of crimes that I did not find to be true. I command the first* Centurion (Captain) Quirinius Cornelius to lead him to the place of execution and prohibit all poor and rich people from preventing Jesus' death. Witnesses to this judgement of mine are: *Daniel Robani, Pharisee; John Zaerbatel; Raphael Robani; Capet, scribe. Jesus is to be led out of the city through the gate Sruenea.*

*

4. This judgement did not please the temple, but there was no dispute with the excited Pontius Pilate, so the temple was silent - for the main thing he had asserted and achieved, and the high council was content with that.

5. However, news came in from all sides that the people were strongly revolting and rebelling about this crime of the temple priests, so on May 7, (Ascension Day) the temple council decided to publish the verdict of Pontius Pilate, but with the exclusion of their crime indictment against Jesus and had this verdict engraved on twelve iron plates, one for each of the twelve tribes, and sent it to the tribes, which also happened. All records about the later persecutions of the Jews were lost. Eventually one was found, whose history and content is as follows:

*

(*The death verdict imposed on Christ, but falsified by the Temple on 7 May of the year 33*)

6. In the chapel[20] of Caserta in Italy there is an ore plate on which the death-sentence of our Divine Saviour is engraved in Hebrew. On the side of the text, however, is the remark: "*An identical plate has been sent to every tribe*".

7. The plate in question was found in the city of Aquila in the former Kingdom of Naples, around 1280[21] (corrected 1278) during excavations. Then it was kept for a long time in the sacristy of a (former) Carthusian monastery near Naples until it was given to the chapel of Caserta, locked

in an ebony box. At the time of the first Napoleon it was in the greatest danger of being taken away to France, and only the fact that the fathers of the memorable monastery had made not insignificant sacrifices to the French armies, gave the necessary weight to their requests to leave the notable historical plate to them.

8. However, the plate was examined in detail by the French Commission of Arts, a French translation of its inscription was made and - the main thing - the authenticity of the inscription was in no way disputed, and according to that translation the judgement in German [English – Translator] is as follows:

9. "Judgement pronounced by Pontius Pilate, governor of Lower Galilee, that Jesus of Nazareth should suffer death on the cross. In the seventeenth year[22] of the Emperor Tiberius[23], (That would be in the year 31, only the chronological records brought by the historian Brinkmayer prove that our Christian calendar starts 2 years too late - therefore Christ was born earlier. 4151 years passed before Christ, after Christ we stand this year [1904] in 1906) and on the 25th day of March in the holy city of Jerusalem, at the time of Anna and Caiaphas, priests and high priests of God: Pontius Pilate, governor of Lower Galilee, sitting on the Praetor's presidential chair, condemned Jesus of Nazareth to die on a cross between two thieves, as great and notorious testimonies of the people testify: (Isa 53:12) Jesus is a seducer. He's a stirrer. He's an enemy of the law. He falsely calls himself the son of God. He calls himself falsely king of Israel. He has entered the temple, followed by a palm-bearing crowd. Orders the first centurion Quirinius Cornelius to lead him to the place of judgement, forbid all poor and rich people to hinder the death of Jesus. The witnesses who drew the verdict against Jesus are Daniel Robani, Pharisee; John Zaerbatel; Raphael Robani; Capet, scribe. Jesus is [to be] led out of the city through the gate "Sruenea".

According to the magazine: "The holy city of God", 1880, p. 145.
Published by the mission house "of the Holy Archangels" for Steyl

*

10. This is the second testimony of the important verdict, according to which Jesus had to suffer death on the cross ".

CHAPTER 10

A FURTHER TESTIMONY IN THE YEAR 72 ABOUT THE WORK AND DEATH OF CHRIST

1. Flavius Josephus, the Jewish historian, writes in the year 72 AD[24] in his 18th book, 3rd chapter, 3rd verse his *Jewish antiquities* about My appearance, My death and the continued existence of the confessors of Christ, in the following words:

Original:

Eodem tempore fuit Jesus, vir sapiens, si tamen virum cum fas est dicere. Erat enim mirabilium operum patrator et doctor eorum, qui libenter vera suscipiunt, plurimosque tam de Judaeis quam de gentibus sectatores habuit. Christus hic erat, quem accusatum a nostrae gentis principus, Pilatus eum addixisset cruci. Nihilominus non destiterunt eum deligere, qui ab initio coeperant. Apparuit enim eis tertia die vivus, ita ut divinitus de eo vates hoc et alia multa miranda praedixerunt. Et usque in hodiernum, christianorum genus ab denominatum non deficit.

Translation:

"Around this time (30-33 after Christ's birth)[25] Jesus lived, a man full of wisdom, if one may call Him a man at all. He did incredible things and was the teacher of those people who liked to receive the truth. So He attracted many Jews and many from paganism. He was the Christ. (i.e. the anointed of God, the Messiah who formed the hope of the Jews in the Old Testament). Pilate condemned Him to death on the cross on the accusation of the noblemen in our country, but those who had loved Him in the past, were not unfaithful to Him even now. For He appeared to them again alive on the third day, as the God-sent prophets announced in advance, among many other wonderful things about Him. Until now the Christian peoples who call themselves after Him, have not stopped."

*

2. (This passage has often been attacked as false: "Is this really how a Pharisee should have written about Jesus? Yes, why not? What evidence to the contrary is there? Was not Nicodemus even high priest under Caiaphas and yet did not shrink from accepting My teaching and even standing under the cross and helping to bury Me? And yet he remained in his office as high priest also after my death. Was not Joseph of Arimathea an councillor of the temple and yet a Christian at the same time? Was he not under the cross and did he not give up his own tomb to bury Me, Jesus, in it? One could also ask, as with Josephus: Was Nicodemus a high priest and Joseph of Arimathea an elder, since both acted against the will of the temple? All manuscripts without exception have this passage, and this is the proof that it is authentic, because not all of them were copied by a single person, but several were copied from the original. Admittedly, Christ-eradicators want to claim this passage as inserted by Origen, † 254, but such objections are worthless, void, because Origen was a man of honour, and this passage is in fact originating from Flavius Josephus. Also since the earliest times, church writers like Eusebius † 340, Hieronymus † 420, Ambrose † 397, Cassidor † 413 etc. refer to these words of Flavius Josephus. But if Josephus is quoting with great accuracy the most insignificant incidents in the capital, as his '*Jewish antiquities*' testify, how could he have passed Me over, since My appearance was stirring up the whole country?)

CHAPTER 11

The Day of Christ's Death on March 25, 33 and the phenomena reported in the Gospels

Schumi comments:

This is what Knight of Vesme writes about in his *History of Spiritism*, (1.Vol. page 451) who, mind you, is not a believer in the Divinity of Christ:

> "The death of Jesus Christ was the greatest event that world history commemorates, at least one should be able to say so in view of the consequences that it had. According to the words of the Gospel, the world trembled at that terrible moment and unheard-of miracles is ascribed to it.

Jesus says:

1. **(14)** Matthew 27:45,46,50-54 says: From the sixth hour (12 noon) on, darkness fell over the whole land until about the ninth hour. Around the ninth hour (3:00 pm) Jesus cried out in a loud voice saying, "Eli, Eli! Lama sabachthani?[26] That means: "My God, My God, why have You forsaken Me?" Then He cried out again (and said: "It is finished" (John 19:39; Luke 23:46 erroneously mentions the sixth instead of the seventh word) and passed away, and behold! The curtain in the temple was torn in two from top to bottom. The earth shook, the rocks split, the tombs opened, many bodies of the blessed[27] who had fallen asleep (*saints are wrong, because no-one is holy except God*) were raised and went out of the tombs, came into the holy[28] (this is what Jerusalem was called because of the ark of the covenant was placed there) city and appeared to many. And when the centurion and those who were with him and were guarding Jesus, saw the earthquake and the other events, they were greatly afraid and spoke: "Truly, this one was the Son of God!"

2. But Mark says: The sun was darkening and the curtain in the temple was torn (Mark 15:33,38). Luke says the same thing in 23:44 (That Mark does not mention the earthquake, the splitting of the rocks and the resurrection of the blessed is - according to Father Jesus - the reason for this is because his father Peter forgot to tell him the rest). John does not speak of darkness, nor of the curtain, nor of earthquakes, nor of the splitting of the rocks, nor of the appearance of the dead, because - as Father Jesus says - he did not put any weight on the material, but only on the spiritual and the most important).

Schumi comments:

> The Knight of Vesme remarks: "All the same, the pagan writers paid more attention to this "miracle" than Luke[29] (Luke did not receive his note among the people until the year 50, hence so deficient [according to the Father Jesus]) and John. So Tertullian († 240) could tell his pagan opponents: **(15)** "Look for it and you will find the incident reported in your own collections of documents" (Tertullians Apologeticum 21, 20.) Rufinus (Book 9, Chapter VI) also has the Gentiles told by a priest of Antioch named Lacianus: **(16)** "Look up your yearbooks and you'll find it," etc.

> The solar eclipse from 12-3 pm in the afternoon. Matthew reports that (according to the Bethlehemite time) from 6 to 9 o'clock, which is about 12 to 3 o'clock in the afternoon according to European time, an eclipse occurred over the whole country. But there are other proofs about this, which prove the fact that there are two letters of the same Dionys, the Areopagite, who is mentioned in Acts that he was converted to Christianity by the famous speech of the apostle Paul in Athens. Here now follows the

first, which is addressed to Polycarp, of which the second appears as it were only as a duplicate:

(17) Apollophanes and I (both pagans at the time) were in Heliopolis when we suddenly saw the moon appear before the sun and eclipse it (although it was not the time of their conjunction). Then we also noticed - it was about the ninth hour - how he (namely the moon) again left the place under the sun, which he had taken, to stand on the diametrically opposite side. This conjunction began from the east side, the moon advanced to the other end of the solar disk, whereupon it stopped and returned to the same place it had come from. So the sun began to darken in the eastern part and received light again in the western part through the regression of the moon. You can let Apollophanes tell you, which will certainly not prove me to lie.[30] (St. Dionys, Book II, Letter 8)

*

Jesus says:

3. Apollophanes by no means proved him a liar, because he also saw the same - because this letter is and remains genuine - despite the counter-statement of those who misjudge Me, Christ.

Schumi comments:

The learned Alexandrian Jew Phlego, who was born towards the end of the second century, wrote the history of the Olympics, from its origin to the year 140 of the Christian era. Although, as a Jew, he was by no means a friend of the Christians, he nevertheless confirms it:

(18) That towards the middle of the fourth year of the 202nd Olympiad (the year 33 according to the Christian calendar), due to the greatest eclipse of the sun ever observed, there was such a deep darkness that the stars could be seen in the middle of the day (read: Julius Africanus, led by Eusebius, Greek chronicles page 188).

The Knight of Vesme remarks: "It is also worth noting that this eclipse could not have been an ordinary solar eclipse, since such an eclipse can only occur at new moon. Here it was on the 14th of the month of Nissam, the day before the Passover, when the sky darkened.[31] So this is a wonderful case that has no equal. K. o. Vesme, op. Cit. 454.

*

Jesus says:

4. **(19)** Father Jesus: It was not a material eclipse of the sun when My flesh-body died, but an inner spiritual eclipse in the whole creation of the universe, which outwardly appeared like an eclipse of the sun, and the spectators of My crucifixion inwardly experienced a horror, as if surrounded by spirits, because their souls detached more from the body through My will, actually was among the spirits who witnessed the sad vision.

Shumi comments:

The earthquake at the death of Jesus. The Alexandrian Jew Phlego adds to his story of the great solar eclipse: That at the same time the city of Nicaea was largely destroyed by a violent earthquake. (Christologi, Vol. II)

(21) The chronicles of Alexandria and the Greek historian Thallus express themselves similarly.

(22) Knight of Vesme says about this: With regard to the earthquake, as we have already seen, which is mentioned by Phlego, Suetonius, apart from Nicaea, which was completely destroyed, knows of no less than twelve cities in Asia, which also fell into ruins and for the restoration of which the emperor was forced to impose tributes.

*

Jesus says:

5. **(23) The splitting of the rocks**. On the Calvary, a rock is still visible today, split in the middle by the earthquake that occurred at the moment when I, Jesus, passed away.

*

Schumi comments:

Millard, Flemming, Maundrel and other researchers claim that this rift is contrary to the laws of nature. Flemming even cites one researcher who was converted by this evidence! (Christology, vol. II)[32]

About the resurrection and appearance of the deceased. Knight of Vesme says: As for the tradition that "the tombs were opened and the bodies of the "saints" rose and appeared to many" (Matthew 27:52-53), some other (simultaneous, spiritual) testimonies to this can be found and the question can be raised as to what happened to those who were resurrected and did appear. At most (says R. v. Vesme) one could admit that at that time, some apparitions of the dead had occurred.

*

Jesus says:

6. **(24)** Father Jesus: Not a few, but **346** deceased people appeared at that time.

*

(Schumi goes on to quote):

K. v. Vesme further remarks: According to this report of the evangelist Matthew, one could also attribute faith to an event that Plutarch (De Orac. Def. 14) reports about.

(25) Plutarch reports that under the rule of Tiberius, a ship sailed around the island of Paxos in the Aegean Sea. While everyone was still sitting at the table, a voice calling the pilot Tamo was heard so clearly that everyone was horrified. When the voice called for the first and second time, he did not answer. However, when the pilot answered the third time, the invisible voice added: "As soon as you reach the height of Palode, announce that the great Pan[33] (the word PAN here is Sanskrit-Slavic for 'Lord' and 'God') has died." There was then a discussion among the sailors as to whether they should follow the request, and it was decided to do so if there would be no wind on the Cape Palode. There the pilot shouted in a loud voice that the Pan had died, and immediately the people who were on board, heard unanimous cries of amazement and lamentation from many invisible beings. The witnesses of this fact reported it in Rome, and Tiberius, who was informed of this, wanted to see Tamo and thereupon summoned the priests to find out who this great Pan was who was to have died. The pagan scholars of God, who believed that if not the gods, then the demons could die, gave their verdict that the deceased was not the Numen of Arcadia, but the son of Mercury and Penelope, who also bears this name.

3. Plutarch puts this most strange tale into the mouth of Cleombrotus, who claims to have heard it from his reader Epitherses, a neither reckless nor lying man who had been present on the ship during that voyage. And his report concludes with these words: 'There is probably no reason to attribute faith in this matter to the Epicureans, who deny the existence of demons.'

4. I, Schumi, took these reports from the book of the Knight of Vesme: *History of Spiritism, Volume 1*, pp. 451-457 and transferred them here purified, as far as they were confirmed to me by the Father Jesus as being based on truth, namely the proofs, number: 15-18, 20-23, 25.

CHAPTER 12

THE PROPHECY OF SALVATION THROUGH THE NAMES OF THE 10 FIRST PATRIARCHS

1. In 1902, until October 8th, I allowed the missionary Ribbentrop of the well-known Gossner's Mission, during his stay on a ship in the port of Cape Town, to make the discovery of the prophecy of the misery and redemption of men through Christ by etymologically[34] comparing the names of the first 10 patriarchs.

2. The interpretation of the names from the Hebrew original text is:

3. **Adam** "man", - **Seth** "set", - **Enos** "misery", - **Kenan** "lament", - **Mahalaleel** "price of God", - **Jared** "he descends", - **Enoch** "consecrated", - **Methusalah** "overcomer of death", - **Lamech** "power", - **Noah** "rest, peace".

4. These names combined in one sentence, reveal the mystery of Christ:

5. (26) Man, set in misery and lamentation, God's price is: He descends as a consecrated person (Chosen One (Psalm 89:4,20; Is 42:1; Luke 23:35: He is Christ, the Chosen One of God) = Anointed, which is equivalent to the Greek Χριστος, Latin: 'Christ' and means in the Old Testament 'King', and as the One who overcomes death and brings strength and peace (to souls).

6. The 10 names of the first arch-fathers or patriarchs from Adam to Noah thus contain, closed in their etymology, My story of redemption of the human race through Me, Jesus Christ, who descended from heaven, taught the teachings of Theosophy (1 Cor. 1:24) according to Apostle Paul, and then freed the human race by the death on the cross from the great chasm that the original sin opened up in Adam between God, their Father and man as children of God.

CHAPTER 13

Message from the Talmud about Christ's Death

All Israelite rabbis recognize the existence of Jesus Christ. The Talmud [35], in "Sanhedrin 43", speaks of it with the following expression: "On the day of preparation (the evening of the vigil) of the feast of Pesach (feast of Easter) Jesus was executed (...) since he exercised magic, seduced Israel and turned them away from God "

*

Jesus says:

A scribe made this news known in the Talmud on 22 October of the year 33.

CHAPTER 14

The Stoning of Jacob, Joseph's youngest Son

1904, June 26, Zurich.

1. Jacob, the youngest of Joseph's five children with his first wife Tamara, was not among the apostles after My death, but in Nazareth where he worked as a carpenter and occasionally instructed people in this city and its surroundings about the Christian religion, until the fatal fate struck him.

Shumi qoutes:

(28) (year 62 after Christ) the high priest Ananus, the son of the high priest Annas (in Jesus' time), at a time when there was no governor in the country, put the (half-) brother of Jesus the so-called Christ, named **Jacob, and some others on trial on charges of breaking the law and had them stoned. Because of this arbitrary court-execution, the high priest was sued by the people at the arrival of the new governor Albinus.** Albinus threatened him with due punishment, and the Jewish king Herod Agrippa II deposed Ananus after only three months in office.

(Flavius Josephus *"Jewish Antiquities"*, 20th book, 9th chapter, 1st verse, which he already wrote down in 72 AD).

CHAPTER 15

Year 64: The first Persecution of Christians under Emperor Nero

Caius Cornelius Tacitus reports in the year 102 (year according to the statement of the Father Jesus) in the 15th book, verses 38 - 43 of his annals, about the great fire of Rome in the year 64 after Christ the following:

- - -

Under the reign of the Emperor Nero the (known) fire of Rome arose, which reduced a large part of the city to ashes and was certainly caused by himself in order to make the city more beautiful. However, Nero did not want the latter to become known among the people, and since the gods did not allow themselves to be appeased by the sacrifices, Tacitus says in verse 44 that Nero accused the Christians living in Rome of this deed, whose author of faith, Christ, had been executed by the procurator Pontius Pilate under the rule of Tiberius. Christianity, suppressed for the moment, recently broke out and spread not only in Judea but also in Rome. The consequence of Nero's accusation was that the Christians were seized, cruelly tortured and killed, so that even the pagans finally felt compassion, seeing that they fell victim to Nero's lust for murder rather than for the public good.

(29) In order to destroy the rumour that the angry gods caused the fire, Nero undercut the guilty and inflicted the most exquisite punishments on those who were hated because of their abomination and were called Christian by the people. The author of this name, Christ, had been executed by the procurator Pontius Pilate under the rule of Tiberius. The unhappy rhapsody, suppressed for the moment, has recently broken out, not only in Judea, the motherland of this creature, but also in Rome, where everywhere all that is vile and disgraceful gathers and gains support. So first of all those were seized who professed to be Christians, not for being arsonists. This explanation is also supported by the opinion of Plin. Ep. 10:97 ad Trajanum: Interrogavi Ipsos, an essent Chrstiani; confitentes iterum ac tertio interrogavi, supplicium minatus; perseverantes duci jussi.*) then on their indication a large number of people, not so much about the crime of arson than for the general hatred of people.[37] (So it is also written in Hist. 5:5 - "Among them there is a persistent holding together and obliging participation; against all others there is hostile hatred." This serious accusation[36] is usually explained by the fact that they abstained from spectacles, festivities, sacrificial meals and the like. But the reason is deeper, namely in their contempt for all other nations, which for example John the Baptist rebukes. (Matt 3:9) According to John 18:28, the chiefs of the Judeans did not go into Pilate's house for fear of defiling themselves. Their hatred against the Samaritans is well known because of the difference of religion. At the time of Tacitus and Pliny, however, Judeans and Christians were mixed together out of complete ignorance, and the accusations of abominations which the latter were said to have committed during their apages (love feasts) were obviously false).

Their execution was accompanied by scorn, in that they were wrapped in animal skins, mauled by dogs or crucified, or covered with pitch and burnt as night-lights as darkness fell. For this spectacle, Nero opened his gardens and gave a circus performance, whereby he, dressed as a charioteer, mingled with the rabble or drove along on a carriage. Therefore the compassion even for those who were guilty and justly punished in an outrageous way, as if they had not been sacrificed for the public good but for the lust for murder of the one (Nero).

Sueton writes in Nero 16 in the year 132 (the year according to the Father Jesus.): "Christians

are afflicted with death penalties. (translated according to historical facts.) It is a human race of new and harmful superstition.”

Affliciti suppliciis Christiane, genus homnium superstitionis noave et maleficae.

Translation :Afflictions inflicted on the Christians, a new class of superstition people, and a criminal people.

CHAPTER 16

The Rapid Spread of Christianity in Asia Minor

Year 111, October 6, Nicomedia[38] in Asia Minor. Cajus Plinius Cacilius Secundus, the youngest governor of Bithynia[39], from his city of residence asks the emperor Trajan (who ruled from 98 to 117) how he should legally treat those who declare themselves Christians. He reports that he has already interrogated and executed some for their disobedience; others who denied they were would be released. Furthermore, that known heretics have confessed to having raised a hymn to Christ, to honor Him as a God, and finally to have joined Him with the oath not to commit any theft, robbery or adultery, not to break their word, of not to refuse on request a spared good, and who had gathered for an innocent meal of love. Plinius said that Christianity would not already be so tenaciously widespread only in the cities, but also in the countryside and in the villages, and that the temples of the pagan gods would already be almost abandoned.

*

The text:

> **(31)** "I make it a law unto me, oh lord, to report to thee in all matters which are doubtful to me. For who better to lift up my doubt or to teach my ignorance? I have never been involved in investigations against the Christians and therefore I do not know what and how extensively one should punish or investigate. I was also in no small doubt whether age makes a difference, or whether people of very tender age and the more mature should be treated differently, whether the repentant should be forgiven, or whether the one who was once a Christian should not be allowed, when he has ceased to be one, to be punished, whether already the names should be punished without further crime, or only the crimes, if they are connected with the name.
>
> Up to now I have done the following with those who have been declared to me as Christians (i.e. I have proceeded in the following way): I asked them if they were Christians? If they admitted, I asked them for the second and third time and threatened them with the death-penalty. If they persisted, I had them executed. For I was convinced that whatever they admitted, at least their disobedience and unyielding persistence must be punished. Others who were infected by the same madness, because they were Roman citizens, I had them recorded and sent to Rome. Soon, because the crime spread as usual by trial, several kinds of the same thing appeared. I received a scripture, without names, which contained the list of many names who denied being or ever had been Christians and who, by reciting prayer to them, called upon the gods and offered wine and incense to your image, which I let be brought for this final purpose with the images of the gods, and also blasphemed Christ, things to which, as they say, the true Christians cannot be forced to say - these now I thought I could let go.
>
> Others, declared Christians by a braggart, claimed to be Christians, but soon denied it again: they had been, but gave it up again. Some three years ago, some even twenty years ago. All worshipped your image and the images of the gods, and they also cursed Christ. They claimed, however, that their guilt or error consisted mainly in the fact that they had met on a certain day before dawn and had sung a song together to honour Christ as a God, and had jointly entered in an oath not to commit a crime, not to commit theft, robbery or adultery, not to break their word, not to deny any deposited property on demand. Thereupon they usually parted and only

came together again for a communal meal without distinction, but innocently, which they ceased to do according to my edict in which I forbade private associations (or hetaerias) in order to follow your orders.

But I thought it all the more necessary to investigate the truth through torture in the case of two female slaves who were called servants. But I discovered nothing but a perverse and unmeasured superstition and postponed the formal investigation to hear your orders. Because the matter seemed worthy of your consideration, especially because of the number of people at risk. For many people of all ages, of all ranks, of both genders are and will be in danger. For the plague of this superstition has spread not only through the cities, but also through the villages and the countryside, but I believe it can be controlled and remedied. At least it is certain that people have begun to visit the almost deserted temples again and to make ceremonial sacrifices again, that here and there sacrificial animals are sold again, which since then have very rarely found buyers. From this we can probably conclude of what a lot of people can be brought to justice if they could rather be brought to true remorse.

The most recent work of Plinii, tenth book, ninety-seventh letter,
all of which are just the letters he wrote to
Emperor Trajan during the time of his governorship.

*

I.6.1 Trajan's answer to Pliny

Year 111, November 15, Rome

You, my Secundus, have taken the appropriate course of action at the hearing of the investigation against the persons you have indicated as Christians. For nothing general, nothing that could serve as a certain norm, as it were, can be decreed. It is not necessary to go to them. But if they are declared and remitted, they must be punished: in such a way that if someone denies being a Christian and proves it by deed, that is, by invoking our gods, he should be forgiven due to his repentance, even if he was suspected before. Unsigned accusations, however, must not be accepted for any crime, for that would be the most dangerous example and contrary to the spirit of my age

From Pliny's most recent work, 10th book, 98th letter.

16.2 Jesus gives clarification about sure sources

1. This account of testimony that My servant Schumi sought is the only reliable sources of the first century, although there are still more that still do not rest on the truth and would undermine the critical observations of the fighters against God in Christ, because such testimonies come precisely from those works which are the sources of the classical writers of history.

2. Furthermore, what good would it do you to rebel against God to eliminate Me, the Creator of worlds, angels, spirits and man?

3. I remain the same God eternally and will preserve My Holiness with new

demonstrations which I announce to you in advance in this book, as My adversaries will disappear from the world and come into the deep darkness for which they work so diligently. In fact, where there is no God - as the spiritual Light of the world - or where He is not desired, there the deepest darkness dominates. Where men of high science present their knowledge for this world, instead of for the honor of God, working only for the contempt of the Word of him and for the elimination of him, there they dwell as evil spirits half mad or as devils!

4. The Word of God is not given to be criticized, to dishonor it and to be eradicated from the hearts of men, but it is given for life and to act accordingly! Therefore you, not called or even chosen by Me, God in Christ, - leave the Holy Scriptures of the Old and New Testaments alone, so that so much more damnation may not come upon you, for you are in the hand of the eternal-just Judge. of divine wisdom[40] Jesus Christ.

CHAPTER 17

CLARIFICATIONS ON THE APPARITIONS OF THE CROSS

1. Since the present research on Me, Jesus Christ, rests on the Truth (i.e. on the rock), which the gates of hell (i.e. the assaults of anti-Christians) cannot win, therefore the sign of the cross is a sign of honor for God , because it is the honorable sign of Christ's victory over the Satan of the world. Therefore the apparitions of the cross in heaven are signs of victory of the divine religion, through Me, Christ, for all men, and therefore for all times it is a holy Sign of the witness of the authenticity of the Word of Christ. Viewed from this point of view, read the following facts which speak here as a demonstration of your authentic faith.

*

17.1. THE FALSE APPEARANCE OF THE CROSS TO EMPEROR CONSTANTINE THE GREAT

1. The story of the apparition of the cross in the firmament in 324 A.D. with the inscription: '*In hoc signo vinces'*, that is: 'In this sign you will prevail', which Constantine the Great told to cheer his soldiers - most of them inclined to Christianity - for bravery against the enemy, is a cheeky lie of the not beautiful character of Constantine.

2. His way of life and atrocities in his own family tell you that I, Jesus, would never have allowed such a man such a great grace, not for My honour, but for slaughtering My children as his opponent!

3. I am the Prince of Peace and not the King of murder, that is against the teaching: "He who wields the sword shall be slain with the sword." (Matt 26:52)

4. Constantine the Great, however, was a bloody tyrant, a murderer of his own son Crispus, as a result of the slanderous accusations made by Fausta, whom he later suffocated in the baths himself, strangled his father-in-law and had the leaders of the defeated Franks slaughtered in the cruellest and most horrible manner.

5. See, if I, Jesus, as God of love, mercy and eternal truth, had approached such a brute, who committed such a thing just after the lie of the appearance of the cross with such a great, undeserved grace - then you, My children, would certainly not have much sublime to think of Me! So remember that it was an impudent and mean lie to exploit the gullibility of his soldiers. The church may well have canonized him for itself but not for Me, because I, God alone am holy and nobody else. (Rev 15:4; Matt 19:17; Mark 10:18; Luke 18:19; 2)

6. See, if I, Jesus, as God of Love, Mercy and Eternal Truth, had come to meet such a bloodthirsty tyrant who perpetrated these crimes after the lie of the apparition of the cross, with such great, undeserved Grace, then you, My children, would not have much sublime to think of Me!

7. So remember that it was an insolent and cowardly falsehood, in order to exploit the lightness of faith of his soldiers! The Church has well declared him holy for herself, but not for Me, because only I, God, and no one else am Holy! [Ap. 15.4]

*

17.2. Some historical quotations about the false appearances of the cross

8. At the time when Constantine, the son and successor of Constantine, was the ruler of the great Roman Empire (according to the Knight of Vesme, Gesch. d. Spir. 1, 507; - 3.), the Patriarch of Jerusalem[41], Cyril (in 349), wrote a letter[42] to Constantine, which is also preserved in his works. After many beautiful sayings about the wonders of heaven, which should serve as a support for the evangelical sermons, he continues as follows:

9. **(33)** "It is also necessary, beloved prince in God, that your kingdom be pleasant in the sight of the Most High, (Constantine was, it should be noted - not in favour of Aryans and Catholics) that the lord may not be afraid to distinguish it with such great miracles. If the memory of your father Constantine so dear and blessed was honoured by the discovery of the holy wood[43] of the cross in Jerusalem... yours is distinguished by miracles, if no longer earthly, then heavenly, since a cross - the happy trophy of the Lord's victory over death - has recently appeared in Jerusalem. "For in those holy days of Pentecost, at about the third hour (9 a.m.) of the ninth of the month of May (Nonae maii means: May 7th), the greatest of all the shining crosses of heaven appeared above our holy mountain Golgotha, extending from there to the Mount of Olives. This apparition did not happen to be seen by this or that of our fellow citizens, but was very obviously presented to all the inhabitants. Neither did it disappear immediately as caused by some temporary hallucination, but the apparition lasted for several hours, with the brilliance of the cross itself darkening the rays of the sun. Shocked and at the same time rejoicing at such a sudden miracle, the whole city hurriedly entered our holy church. It was indeed a tremendous spectacle. To see that immense crowd, old and young, men and women and children, Christians and Gentiles alike, hurrying up and all unanimously sending praise to Christ our Lord like one heart and soul, to see him, the Creator of these miraculous proofs of our most sacred dogma ... I therefore consider it necessary, in God's most beloved ruler and master, to inform you of this and to submit to your consideration a fact observed by all the inhabitants of Jerusalem, since all of them certainly were not prepared for it and will hardly let that miracle be forgotten, etc., etc.

10. The Patriarch Cyril has therefore heard nothing of a heavenly appearance of Constantine the Great, "*in hoc signo vinces*"! Since he would have been favoured only by earthly wonders of the same (as the discovery of the wood from the cross) and not by celestial signs like the one Cyril tells us about. So much is certain that the authenticity of the Cyrillic Letter has not yet been questioned by any writer. Tillemont[44] keeps him beyond reproach. Incidentally, in the fifth century Sozomenes[45] also speaks of the cross that appeared in Jerusalem and even says that "soon the news spread to all the provinces of the Roman Empire and caused no little consternation". (Hist. eccl. Book I, Chapter IX and Book IV, Chapter XV)

*

11. The strange appearance was also mentioned by the historians Socrates (379-440), Philostorgius (368-425) and Rufinus (345-410), as well as the Alexandrian Chronicle and finally Theodoretus (387-458). The latter even says: "This news came from Julian, yet, as with Pharaoh, his heart remained hardened".

*

17.3. A TRUE APPARITION OF THE CROSS

12. **(34)** In 1826, a devout preacher, a Passionist missionary, stood on a hill on which the village church of Migné in France was located and proclaimed the Word of God.

13. The sun was barely behind the mountains and they were about to erect a cross on the place, as is customary among the Passionists when they preached a sermon. On this occasion, the missionary naturally spoke of the importance of the cross for the Christians, pointing to that apparition of the cross which had appeared[46] to the army of Constantine (it was not to the army that the cross appeared, but Constantine told the army that it had appeared to him, etc.) Then suddenly his words were interrupted by loud screams emanating from his listeners. At a certain height above the church, another cross had appeared, a very regular and well drawn cross, shining silvery white and (according to Father's statement) 76 feet long and of a corresponding breadth. For a full three quarters of an hour it hovered motionless over the church building, whereupon it disappeared. Four thousand and 336 people who were present fell on their knees, struck by the miracle and praised God.

14. The news of the events, of course, spread in a flash throughout the civilized world, and an episcopal commission was appointed to examine the case. This was followed by a commission appointed by the government and a myriad of scientific commissions, in which Protestants and professors from each faculty participated. In all this, very little was achieved. Few, including even Catholics, did not believe that it was a real miracle. On the other hand, more and more hypotheses trying to explain the phenomenon was presented, but they were mostly unfounded. If you want to get more detailed information about this, please refer to the book by Wrindtz, *La Croix de Migné*,[47] and the French magazines of that time.

15. Despite doubt then and now that this phenomenon was a real one, caused by Me, Jesus, it remains in force as real because I will often send you such confirmations in the future!

*

17.4. AN APPARITION OF THE CROSS TO F. SCHUMI

30 June 1904

Schumi speaks:

When I, Schumi, was 3 ½ years old, in 1852, I was sitting one morning at 11 o'clock in very dull and rainy weather in front of my father's house on a staircase leading to a raised apartment room on the right. I looked calmly into the dull cloud firmament from whence it was raining heavily and looked forward in childlike simplicity to the diversity of days that were a pleasure to me either way, for the childlike mind sees everything through the eyes of desire and joy for life.

When I was looking for a little while into the cloudy sky, suddenly, coming out of the clouds on the left and following a half-arc downwards, a golden cross (as the Father Jesus tells me today, June 30, 1904), 150 centimeters long and 70 centimeters wide, slowly moving forward, entered my field of vision, at its lowest point it remained calmly floating for 30 seconds, then it moved slowly from left to right upwards into the clouds, where it disappeared.

Today, after 52 years, I still remember this phenomenon as vividly as if it had happened recently. That it was not a mirage[48] ('fata morgana'), is proven by the fact that it [mirages] can only take place in a clear, calm sky, smooth and calm like a mirror. But this day, July 10 (as the Father says), was a very

rainy and gloomy day, so no illusion of a mirage was possible.

This apparition of the cross happened, as the Father Jesus tells me, for the reason that I can give you something from my own life as authentication of the above apparitions of the cross. The crosses that appeared in Jerusalem and in Migné were silver-white radiant, the one I saw was all golden yellow and radiant, thus the cross of the Father or of love in God, but the others of the Son or of wisdom in God, being electric light.

*

Jesus speaks:

13. Truth-loving writers have long since accepted as a firm fact that the story of My life, work and end as Jesus of Nazareth is based on truth according to the accounts of the Old and New Testaments, in which the great salvific teaching of Christ and its propagation is certified by a number of enthusiastic witnesses of the truth and in Christian and pagan history books. Only hatred against the existence of God and Divine truth cannot suffer this noble truth because it [the truth] contradicts the spiritual lie. Because this is the last judgement of the world that truth fights against the lie of the false prophets until it overcomes it.

14. There is no greater struggle in the scientific world than against Me, Jesus Christ, about Me being God! Every word of the New Testament is put on the gold scale, everything is criticized and disparagingly judged, false concepts of truth are imputed, proofs where they cannot be fought down are either completely concealed or declared as worthless and contestable (even if no proofs for this assertion are produced). I refer to the lie as Satan - so Satan fights with the truth - with Me, the Christ. But you have a passage in Revelation in which it says that the victory was given to Christ. (Revelation chapters 12 and 19) And what will be the reward of the fighters against Christ? Certainly the dwelling of the one for whom they worked, criticized and fought - hell!

CHAPTER 18

ABOUT FORCED FAITH

1. Over the course of time, the Church has brought to light many misunderstood interpretations of the Bible, which have been going on since the Council of Nicaea (year 325) until our days. Through these fallacies[49] and contradictions that crept into the true faith, the door was opened to free thought, upon which the various churches and religious sects began to form and have formed. Therefore, it was considered necessary to proclaim the dogma that the mind should be captured, and so the uncritical obedience of faith was demanded for everything the priest says. Then people were dissuaded from reading the Bible, finally forbidden to read any book that did not have the episcopal consent printed on it.

2. The priests teach you that the spirit of man is not God's spirit but another spirit. But with this they make Me, Christ and the apostle Paul, liars. In order to pass on the accusation, I gave the relevant clarification in the *Announcements* 1:105 and advise you to come to Me in the school of *Christian Theosophy*, if you want to learn the truth.

3. For now, before the establishment of the millennial kingdom, the time has come where I, Jesus, teach My children Myself, as it is stated in the prophets Isaiah and Jeremiah, of which John also speaks (6:45). Who will let himself be taught by Me, he will become an inhabitant of the earth that is changed into paradise, who does not, he will not reach this favour.

4. These stated facts are to open your eyes, to enlighten reason and let the heart burn in love towards Me, that you now understand My words of love correctly, because now you have already begun to understand the great contradictions between human and spiritual interpretation, and this is to convince you that you are to let yourselves be taught by Me out of the Bible and not by people, when you want to understand them!

CHAPTER 19

THE TIMES OF THE BOOKS OF THE PROPHETS

5. My life-story is foretold by the Old Testament, and the New Testament is the spectacle of the prophecies of the prophets being fulfilled. That is why it is important to know the time when My tools wrote these, to be able to appreciate the value of their ancient testimonies about My life-story. From the periods of the past shines the light of truth about My existence, and you are to know this more exactly than this has been the case so far.

*

19.1. PERIODS OF ACTIVITY OF THE PROPHETS BEFORE CHRIST

1491-1451 **Before Christ**, Moses worked

1055-1015 King David reined and wrote his Psalms in Jerusalem since 1043

1015- 975 Solomon reigned: He received the High Song by dictation in the year 984 before Christ

763 - 727 Hosea wrote

780 - 740 Joel lived as a prophet and wrote what he received in 770

760 - 739 Amos lived as a prophet

759 - 714 The prophet Isaiah worked at Nain

720 - 685 The prophet Micha wrote

629 - 588 Jeremiah lived as a prophet in Jerusalem. He wrote the first half of his book (chapters 1-39) before, and the second (chapters 40-52) during the time of the Babylonian captivity

620 - 615 wrote the prophet Zephaniah

606 - 539 wrote the prophet Daniel

594 - 572 wrote the prophet Ezekiel at the river Chebar in Babylon

576 – 554 wrote the prophet Obadiah

520 – 487 wrote the prophet Zachariah

450 – 427 wrote the prophet Malachi

*

19.2. The oldest known Bible of the Year 735 before Christ

Schumi speaks:

Graz daily post, 22 January 1903

The oldest manuscript of the Bible has now been discovered in Syria. The complete manuscript of the five books of the Old Covenant has been found there, in Samaritan letters, written on parchment made of gazelle skin. Experts have determined that the manuscript dates from 735 B.C. and is thus older than all the Hebrew manuscripts (except for the originals, all of which were lost in the destruction of Jerusalem in 70 B.C. after Christ) that have been found to date. It has already been seen that the text of the Bible as we know it now seems to be imperfect in many cases. The well-known orientalist Georges Zeidun has been entrusted with the temporary storage of the precious find and further research.

CHAPTER 20

RESEARCH AND NEWS ABOUT THE TIME OF THE ORIGIN OF THE GOSPELS JOHN

20.1 ABOUT THE GOSPEL OF JOHN

1. John, an apostle and evangelist, was the son of the fisherman Zebedee and Sarah (Salome) [50] of Capernaum and learned the carpenter's trade from the sons of the late foster father Joseph. That is why he then came to Me at the same time when I appeared in public, since he had already grown fond of Me as a schoolboy in Joseph's house. He was then 25 years old.

2. But he is also the only evangelist whose gospel is pure, since he himself was present everywhere the whole time and therefore wrote what he himself saw and experienced. He wrote from the year 30 - 33 when he walked around with Me, as I told him what he should write down in extracts and made this Gospel, together with My speech at the last supper, available for general use in the year 70.

3. John justified the authenticity of his notes with the following words: "That which was there from the beginning, which we have heard, which we have seen with our own eyes, which we have contemplated and which our hands have touched, we also proclaim. This is the proclamation that we have heard from Him. (John 1:1-5)

4. John 19:33-35 writes: When the soldiers came to Jesus and saw that He was already dead, they did not break His legs, but one of the soldiers thrust Him in the side with a lance, and immediately blood and water flowed out. (And I, John), "He who has seen these things bears witness, and his testimony is true; and he is convinced that he speaks the truth, so that you also may believe."

5. John 21:24 writes: "This is the same disciple who bears witness to this event (the life and death of Jesus) and wrote this; and we know that his witness is true."

6. This passage is regarded by critical researchers as not written by My disciple John, because of the passage: "and we know that his testimony is true" appears in it - and immediately the Asia Minor priest John, who is mentioned under Mark[51], is the writer of the Gospel of John around the year 130 after Me.

7. If even this small passage were to come from another hand, it says that the scribe of the events was John himself; but this passage too is from John, for John was in the habit of not asserting so apodictically[52], but he said it in a roundabout way, but in such a way that an enlightened researcher would soon be able to interpret the verse.

8. The Gospel of John and the Revelation are both written by himself, the latter he received to write in the year 98 on the island of Patmos[53], when he was 91 years old.

*

20.2 About the Gospel of Matthew, the real one that disappeared

9. Matthew, My second scribe, was previously employed as a customs scribe in a Roman customs station between Capernaum and a former small town called "Kis" (Matt 9:1,9) and hence the accusation that I walk around with customs officers and sinners. He mostly wrote notes that contain those facts that are missing in John.

10. He was born in year 5 in Arimathea from Jewish parents. Until the year 50 he went around like the other apostles and taught the gospel. From the year 50, 29 September to 51, 2 October, he stayed in (New) Babylon - as the city in Syria was later called Baghdad - and after he had converted the king and his court there, he went away to India in the year 51, on 2 October, and took the records made in the years 30 - 33 with him. There he fell into the hands of the Brahmins[54] on 25 May in the year 56, who stabbed him with a dagger and took his gospel away from him.

11. This gospel is the only original that still exists, and it is kept as a large relic in a Pagoda, the contents of which are written in Aramaic-Hebrew.

20.3 Another Gospel, which has become the original, by another Matthew called 'La Rabbas', and it's contradictions

12. The pseudo-Matthew, named L'Rabbas[55], a Greek by birth, was a writer in Sidon, converted to Christianity in the year 50 when he was 42 years old, and immediately began as a pious and truth-seeking man to write down from the collected fragments and what he heard from less or more truth-loving eyewitnesses about the life, deeds and teaching of Christ. He had written several stories, which differed from each other, which he improved according to the news that seemed credible to him. Out of the original 15 gospels, (hence the once circulating false gospels) which he wrote, he combined the best and most credible into one gospel of Matthew, which you now possess. He wrote only Hebrew (not Greek). He died in 69 after Me, Jesus.

13. The fact that the pseudo-Matthew and Luke were not eyewitnesses, but later collectors of existing records and narratives, excuses them that some things are not true.

14. Then one must also take into account the fact that the apostles were Jews and therefore mixed some old Jewish things with Christian and their own good views and left them as Christian truths. But for you it is enough that you know the truth only in so far as to distinguish the core from the shell. But to give some proof of the truth of what has been said, some such passages shall be discussed.

I. L'Rabbas-Matthew (1:22-25) says: "But Joseph[56] (Joseph was the son of Jacob with the surname Eli of Nazareth, *Announcements* 1:60; Matt 1:16; Luke 3:23) did not attend (know) Mary until she gave birth to her first son, to whom he gave the name Jesus." L'Rabbas received this information in the year 63, on May 5th in Nazareth, from people who did not know the true story. But with this ambiguous message, Rabbas threw into the hand of the critics the torch of doubt about Mary's virginity after My birth.

II. Luke 2:7 says: "Mary gave birth to her firstborn son in Bethlehem" and thus makes the

same dubious report as L'Rabbas, since he also received it from people who did not know the true event.

I was Mary's first and only son, as it is written in the story of My youth[57] which I dictated Myself. (ChtS IX 16, 17, 17, 1-5; compare Isa 7:14; 9:5; Micah 5:1; *Announcements* 1:58; 3)

III. L'Rabbas Matthew 13:54-57 recounts: "When Jesus came to His hometown of Nazareth, He taught in their school in such a way that all were astonished and said, "From where did He get such wisdom (Rabbas learned these passages 54-56 in the year 56 on May 5th - read Joh. 7:15,52) and miraculous powers[58]? Isn't He the carpenter's (Joseph's) son? Isn't his mother's name Mary? And His brothers Joses[59], (Joel, the eldest son died in [the year] 20 at the age of 58) Simeon, Judah (Samuel) and Jacob? And His sisters, are they not all with us? And [they] were annoyed with Him."

IV. John 6:42 tells you that also in Capernaum in the year 30, on October 8, they said: "Is not this Jesus, the son of Joseph, whose father and mother we know? How then can he say: I have come from heaven?"

V. Luke 3:23 says: "And Jesus, when He began to teach, was about thirty years old and was mistaken for a son of Joseph, who was a son (descendant) of [60]Eli (named Jacob (Matt 1:16))

VI. Luke 4:22 tells the same story as L'Rabbas-Matthew 13:54-56, where he only briefly mentions the words of the people that they asked: "Is not this Joseph's son?"

VII. Also Mark 6:3 tells of the event in the synagogue at Nazareth, like L'Rabbas - Matthew 13:54-56, where the same questions about the origin of Jesus are mentioned.

15. Father Jesus: These reports led many a critic to believe that Mary had several other children with Joseph besides Myself, while these sons were the children of Joseph from his first wife, Tamar. They are also mentioned in Matthew 12:46, Mark 3:32 and Luke 8:20 on another occasion.

16. As for the sisters mentioned, they were not the daughters of Joseph but of his poor[61] relatives, who were called My sisters because they lived and acted according to the mind and will of both Joseph and Mary.

17. Had Rabbas, Mark and Luke been eyewitnesses (i.e. synoptists), they would certainly have brought the truth as noted by the apostle Matthew in the year 32, which does not allow for ambiguity.

18. Rabbas, Matthew and Luke - because they were not eye-witnesses - are to blame for the fact that very many Bible Christians consider Me to be a son of Joseph and that I have raised Myself up to a God-man through My pious way of life. The following evidence will teach you the opposite.

I. Jehovah, God the Father from eternity, God's counsel or God's wisdom, which in spiritual language means the Son of God and being God's power or Holy Spirit - and yet being Joseph's Son - which even some Protestant priests believe - is hair-raising nonsense of the Biblical superficiality of their religious office!

II. Rabbas 28:7 tells that the angel said to the women: "He will go before you into Galilee, and there you will see Him. Behold! I have foretold you". But no passage of the New

Testament certifies this prophecy of the angel. The question is: Did the angel lie or the pseudo-Matthew? See, Rabbas had gone about, and what he found written and what he heard said, he used all these things, and hence the contradictions.

III. In Matthew 10:34-38[62] and Luke 14:26-27[63], there are requirements set for every person, that every reader of the Bible should be upset and angry about; but the critics throw logs under My feet and say that I made demands on mankind that no-one can fulfill who has a heart for his parents, his wife, his children etc., that I had no heart and no understanding about human nature and so made insane demands on Christians. Therefore, it is well worth your while to read My Enlightenments in the *"Announcements"* 1:130 (from first to last)[64], in order to make your God understand what He spoke, instead of proclaiming to the world the samples of your ignorance of the spiritual meaning of the Biblical language!

IV. Matthew 19:20 says: Whoever leaves his father, mother, wife, children, brothers, sisters and fields for Christ, will receive a hundredfold payment in the spirit realm, which is really grotesque - a 100 women! But to be a human being and have 100 parents, that is the biggest nonsense you can write, and yet it is printed like that. Are the over-wise critics who attack Me because of such spiritually spoken verses and throw them under the feet of their mockery are to be pitied that they do not have so much reasoning spirit out of themselves to consider that a man cannot have 100 parents after all? So this verse must certainly mean something other than what is materially understood by it. Read the enlightenment about this in "*Announcements"* 1,36.

*

20.4 About the Gospel of Mark

19. The evangelist Mark, born in the year 14, was the only child of the apostle Peter. Mark accompanied his father since the year 38 as a 24-year-old disciple. He learned what he wrote from his father, so he is the most reliable evangelist besides John and Matthew[65], the apostle of the Indians. He began to write down his gospel messages in [year] 45, which he completed in 59 and published in 60.

20. Since [the year] 57, May 17, he and his father Peter have been in (New) Babylon, which since the ninth century has been called Baghdad. Peter calls Mark his son Mark in the first letter from Babylon, which he wrote to the churches in Asia Minor and Asia from July 26-28, [year] 57 (1 Peter 5:13).

21. After the assassination of his father[60] on 9 October 59, Mark remained alone at the court of the King of Syria in New Babylon as the apostolic teacher of the city and the country. He died in the year 65 on June 15th in a no longer existing market town on a mission journey in Asia Minor, slain while preaching the Gospel to the Gentiles, since he often made such mission journeys from Babylon.

22. His gospel was written in good Hebrew and remained in Babylon. The bad Greek translation that remained was therefore not an original. The original was destroyed by fire in the royal palace in 78[61].

*

20.5 John the Presbyter[66]

23. Once a disciple of the apostle, John - born of Jewish parents in [the year] 70 in a no longer existing place of Judea - was a disciple of the apostle John since his eighteenth year, that is since 88 - later, in 95, he became a Presbyter and stayed permanently in Asia Minor, not far from Ephesus, since he was in a good center of Christians. He died in 147 at the age of 77.

24. What Papias[67] tells about the evangelist Mark according to the reports of this Presbyter, is based on too little knowledge about the origin of Mark; for John the Evangelist was not at all talkative at his age, since he was in constant absorption in God, so he gave only short answers to the questions put to him, and therefore the wrong report about the Presbyter John to Papias (dictation from the Father Jesus on 15 June 1904)

*

20.6 Papias

25. Born in 83, he also heard John preach in his youth until 95, but as a child he did not associate with the evangelist John. In 105 he became a follower of Christianity. In his book: *"Presentation of the Revelations of the Lord"* he tells us that he has gathered together everything that the assistants of the (former) apostles told him about the actions and work of the apostles. He died as a famous church teacher and head of the Hierapolis congregation in 168 in his 85th year (report by Father Jesus 15 June 1904).

26. Knight von Vesme, in the *History of Spirituality*, (in the 1st book p. 381) tells that Papias asserts the authenticity of the gospel of Mark and adds to it: He (Mark) had only borrowed this story from Peter, but he took the greatest care that nothing has been forgotten or falsified.[68]

*

20.7 The Asia Minor priest Aristion (year 120)

27. Conybeare (expositor 1893 October, pg. 241) found in an Armenian manuscript the conclusion of Mark (chap. 16, 9-20) with the title "according to Aristion".

28. From this, the Gospel critics concluded that chapter 16:9-20 was wrong because of the insertion of this Asia Minor priest. This view is not justified, because Mark wrote his gospel himself, Aristion just corrected it a little bit in the year 120 AD in chapter 16, verses 9-20.

29. All the corrections and writings of the Gospels that are otherwise described by critical researchers as coming from another hand rather than from evangelists and apostles, are otherwise nothing but worthless hypotheses, because the critics did not know the origin of the Gospels.

*

20.8. About Luke

30. Luke, the physician, was born in a place in Judea that no longer exists and was of Jewish descent. He studied in Athens, where he became acquainted and friends with Theophilus[69], who was born in Athens and studied at the university there. Theophilus later became a lawyer. [70]

31. Luke came back to Judea in the year 45 as a 22 year old man and doctor after completing his studies, converted to Christianity in that year (45) and was a student of the apostles from that time on. He wrote down his gospel slowly between 45-63. In the same time he wrote down his Acts and died as a martyr in 63 by being stoned to death in Capernaum. Therefore his Acts of the Apostles ends at the year 63.

32. Luke 1:2 - he reports himself that he did not hear what he wrote, but: "As those have given (i.e. told) us who saw it from the beginning and were servants of the Word".

*

Shumi speaks:

> In the *Analecta Anti-Nicaeana* by Bunsen, the name is derived from K. v. Vesme, *Hist of Spir. I, 381*: "Hegesippus, another disciple of John and a contemporary of the Nazarene, says in turn that Luke never saw Christ, but received the account of His life from Paul. Irrenaeus repeats the same thing in the year 148 (a year later than Father Jesus said.) (Cont. Haeres, Book IV, Chapter I) Clement of Alexandria, his contemporary (150-220 according to church information, - but in fact from the year 138-220) (according to Father Jesus) quotes the Gospels of Luke and John[72] sixteen times. Clemens lived to be 105 years old.

Father Jesus explains the error

33. Hegesippus was born in the year 43, lived until the year 137. He was not a disciple of John, but he was a diligent reader of the Acts of the Apostles since the year 70. He could only say about Luke what he heard spoken by the people, therefore it is also a wrongful idea that Luke received his Gospel from Paul.

34. If one only reads the first chapter of Luke, one will find that Luke collected the apostles' written notes from among the people from the year 45 onward; for if Luke had received his Gospel from Paul, then a Gospel similar to that of Luke would also be available from Paul. However, the public prosecutor in Athens, Theophilus - whom Luke mentions - entered falsified corrections into Luke's Gospel, since he did not receive any authentic news, but only popular traditions from as far as Athens in Greece.

35. The erroneous impression that Luke had received the Gospel from Paul, is already shown in what has been explained.

36. The passage in Acts 16:10, to which the critics of the Gospels refer, that Luke (since about 52) was a disciple of Paul, is misunderstood if one compares the passage 16:10 with counter-passages in Acts 16:25; 17:4, 15; 19:22 and considers that Luke is not mentioned anywhere, but Silas, Timothy, Barnabas etc. Luke only came to Paul when he was sent to Rome in the year 59; only then was Luke mentioned to be in Rome, in the letters to the Colossians (4:16), in 2nd Timothy 4:11 and in Philemon (:24).

37. In Luke 19:27 there is a passage[73] that makes Me, your God Jesus Christ, a mass murderer of My adversaries and the apostles My henchmen, who are to strangle those people

who do not want to acknowledge Me! Now how do you like the Bible according to the literal sense?! Well, your dear and good Jesus, a bloody tyrant! A human mass-murderer! A leader of murderers!

38. Therefore I say: Why don't you come to Me, your God, Father and Savior Jesus, and let Me teach and guide you, so that you understand the mystical words of the Bible and that not every denier of God can throw himself into the dung of his hair-raising Bible proofs! The Enlightenment about Luke 19:27 can be read in the Christian-Theosophical magazine *Einst und Jetzt* III, S. 67.

CHAPTER 21

Clarification of Gospel Criticism

1. The differences and deviations of the Greek-Lutheran and the Vulgate Gospel, first of all, are due to the differences between the Greek and Latin languages, as well as the apathy with which the scribes at the Council of Nicaea (year 325) - who was those writing down the above what was dictated to them at their own discretion; [also] from the many later corrections done by the appointed provosts - and finally by the subsequent transcriptions, about which the variants in different prints testify.

2. As a result of these differences, and the therefore often incomprehensibility of the Bible verses, the texts have been improved where it is better and clearer or more precisely expressed, because there is nothing to the letters, but only to the spiritual meaning of the word, whether the verses are correct and concern what is meant by them: since we have already looked at Isa 14, where people replace Lucifer with Christ, as we have seen, the author could not question the prophecy without having the inner word.

3. The dispute among scholars over the authenticity of the gospel, which is better or worse, which first and which presentation is copied from the others and when the gospels were written and other criticism of words and verses, is to be avoided - since the historical data is completely unfruitful, ignorant and compiled out of pure hypotheses. The original Christians had the records which they partly copied from originals, partly heard and partly preached themselves. One's insight was better, the other's worse. But Luke and L'Rabbas were merely Christian Homeruses[74] or collectors of notes, transcripts and oral testimonies. What criticism of authenticity and priority should then be made of Luke and Pseudo-Matthew? The text of the real Matthew is still in India, and Mark is also not an eyewitness, but a later recorder, whose Gospel is the best after John; for only the Gospel of John is original. When indeed contradictions occur here and there, then only I, Jesus, can interpret them correctly, through him who is granted the grace to receive enlightenment from Me through the inner word. No-one else, because the best proof cannot be claimed to be based on truth the way the intellectual wisdom works out the matter according to its own opinion - what can be seen from all the research done about the origin of the Gospels from the reports presented here.

*

4. A great and important proof that the gospels were not written many years later than it actually was - although the critics want to prove the opposite - is also provided by the apostle Paul, who died in Rome in the year 65. (The eradicators of Christian apostolic truth seek out every conceivable trick in order to suspect everything, to degrade it and make it a lie. And that is where My truth proves to be true: "By the fruits you can recognize the tree")

5. Since the prophecy of the return of Christ by Matthew (Matt 24:30-31,33-34) - who recorded it in the year 33, which Rabbas found among the people in the year 50, as well as the records Luke (9:26-27; Matt 16:27 -28; Mark 9:1) found[75] in the year 45 and wrote it down - did not come true for too long and people already began to doubt the authenticity of the prophecy, Paul reported in the year 52 in the second letter to the Thessalonians (2:3-4) from Corinth and said:

> "Dear brethren, be not deceived by anyone in any way; for Jesus does not come until the apostasy (from faith) comes and reveals the man of sin, the child of destruction, who is the adversary (who is the ever assiduous criticizer and liar and thus the eradicator of the truth

of Christ), who exalts himself above all that is called God or worship, that is, that he sits down in the temple of God (that is, that he seduces people by his persuasion and draws them into his lie so that they believe him), and that is, he sits down in the temple of God as a God and pretends to be God (that is, he pretends to be the truth, as the prophet Daniel calls God in 4:34).

6. and thus the false prophet says: "His word is the proven Truth, God's word but lies!"

7. This passage of the New Testament is highly important in that it proves that the evangelists Matthew and Luke indeed wrote before Paul and that the people firmly believed in their words. For what reason would this passage be included in the Letter to the Thessalonians, as it points the people onto the right track of faith in prophecy?

8. This prophecy of Matthew was already copied in the year 36, that is 3 years after My death, and sent to Paul from Smyrna.

9. So this is a proof that the evangelists wrote in the first century; otherwise Paul would not have discussed a prophecy which the people already looked upon with doubt, because it did not come true while they were waiting for it.

10. A proof of the authenticity of the Acts of the Apostles is given to you by the story of Peter with the sorcerer Simon in Samaria (in the year 35), to whom Peter cried out in the holy fire of indignation: "That you may be damned with your money, that you think that God's gift is [available] for money!" For if the book of Acts had been written in later times, it would not have mentioned the magician Simon as a convert.

11. Knight von Vesme writes about this in his *History of Spiritism* (Volume I, pp. 472-483): *Simon alone did not linger long in the bosom of the nascent Church of Christ. He was too enterprising, too honour-hungry, to send himself in there, to be active in the second limb where he should necessarily have been in relation to the apostles.*

12. During his journey to Alexandria (Omel. Pseudo-clem. II, 22, 24.) he worked on a theosophical system from his studies of Greek Coptic philosophy, which he tried to support in a book with the title "*The Great Exposition*" (or *Apophasis Magna*) and which for a long time was thought to have been lost or not even written, since all stories concerning the magician Simon were considered by sceptics to be a collection of legends. In 1862, in order to completely destroy that significant upsurge of critical nihilism in history, manuscripts were discovered in Greece from the beginning of the third century with the strange title "*Philosophumena*", written by a certain Hippolytus, containing violent attacks against the Pope Calixtus. Many believed that the same St. Hippolytus who lived at that time was to be the same person. Even Renan admits that the discovery of these manuscripts proves that the legend of Simon the Magician is true, at least in its broadest aspects. Also a Protestant writer, de Pressensé, explains: *"Many theologians concluded from the myths, which the history of Simon shows in myriads, that this history consists only of legends, but it contains positive facts, to which the church fathers unanimously give witness and which is also confirmed by the recently discovered writing of Hippolyte* (De Pressensé, *Histoire des trois premiers siecles de l'Eglise*, p. 395.)

13. In this *Philisophumena*, various passages of Simon's "great exposition" are cited. It can be seen that the religion founded by the magician was a Gnostic doctrine. It was based on the assumption of a single God, who temporarily incarnated, supported with the help of Divine powers. Simon considered himself one [Gnostic]. That doctrine contained all revelations with an extended eclecticism[76](i.e. selection of the best), trying to consolidate them into a single law

of ideas.

14. The strangest thing is that Simon was accused by the other Christian authors of having intercourse with a courtesan named Helena, which he would have acquired on the market of Tyre. The Philosophumena provide us with the key to this legend by reporting that as a part of the symbolic theories of Simon, the "Great Idea", was a divine force, to which he gave the name "Helena", (i.e. the luminous one), as it was the eternal cause of dispute between men. It is certain that his sect continued to exist alongside Christianity until the third century. (*Philosophum, Book VI*, Chap. 1, 20: - Orig. Contra Cels. I. 7; VI, 11)

15. Most people, because they have become darker in spirit, say: "The Holy Scripture was written by men, and therefore it is a human composition, because God and Christ have written nothing, how can one believe in such works which men wrote and attribute it to be of Divine descent? It is man's work, strongly contestable man's work, like everything that men write, may it be this or that, so it is also with prophets and apostles, they were clever men who knew how to calculate well what must once happen, and so they wrote, but only they, not God, not Christ!

16. This now customary objection of the worldly wise can be countered by the fact that everything these men wrote literally came true, and what they taught is pure Divine truth, because everything bears the stamp of Divine truth. Then why suspect such gentlemen? Why make them out to be cunning frauds in the eyes of the people? Does not this show the lowest disposition of a man, when he cannot stand the honesty of another man, that he is trying to put him in a crooked light for no reason and cause!

17. There is a proverb saying: "As the rascal is, so he thinks of others! And another proverb of higher grandeur is: "Good people think only good things of their neighbours." Always keep these two proverbs in mind and bear in mind that your judgements about others, when it flows without reason and cause, accuse yourselves and present yourselves before the world to be like you would like to present others.

18. My Divine saying is: "Do to your neighbour what you want him to do to you". And if you do not wish to be called swindlers, hypocrites, deceivers and the like, refrain from depriving others of their honour!

19. Judge My instruments through love; for they are My children and I may after all keep speaking and dictating to My children!? When I do not have interaction with someone and he in his ambition also denies grace to others who are better than him, then he should rather be ashamed that he is too sinful a man to be able to communicate with Me, but should not to suspect and drag through the dung what he cannot understand in his own spiritual darkness.

20. Every attack on My instruments hits Me; because My holy word is objected to and dragged through the dung. What will be the consequence of such actions against Me!? It's easy for you to imagine. Therefore, first be honest yourself, then you will judge as you are. Where darkness and lies dwell, there is no place for light and truth!

*

21.1 Ironic remarks for critics of the Gospels

(revelation via Jakob Lorber on 10/30/1842)

21. "I, Jesus, said to Lorber: You shall not become fiery and the seeker Ans. H.W.[77] shall not become afraid. For what you receive is My business, and I will certainly know to take care in everything that it will be as it should be. But you do enough, if you fulfill My will.

22. But let everyone remain nicely far from My gift with the mind, otherwise he is like the seed that fell from the sower's hand among the thorns and thistles, because the mind is the dwelling of all kinds of worries. Who therefore measures My word with his intellect instead of with his heart, he will hardly ever reap the fruits from My seed." For example:

I. In Matthew (28:1-7) two women come to the tomb; an earthquake happens, an angel appears, rolls the stone from the tomb, sits on it and tells the two women about Me.

II. In Mark (16:1-7) three women come and take care of the stone, which is taken away by an invisible power, and they then go into the tomb and find a young man with a white robe sitting on their right side, who comforts them and gives them information about Me!

III. In Luke (24:1-7) several unnamed women with spices even come and find the stone already rolled away, go straight into the grave and find no-one there – yet, after a while, when they were quite worried, two men in shining clothes came to them and gave them information about Me!

IV. In John (20:1-14) only one woman comes, namely Magdalene, finds the tomb open, but no-one inside. So she runs to Peter, and Peter and the other disciple hurry to the tomb and find nothing but the shrouds folded together, and then go home again. Only afterwards, the weeping Magdalene looks into the grave and sees two angels in white garments at the head and feet, who only ask: "Woman, why are you weeping? And after the answer to this question, I am also already behind her!

23. He who judges world history externally and purely according to his own understanding, what must he necessarily find in these four very different statements, if he wants to be severely critical?

24. I tell you, either the death of his mind or the death of his faith. The death of his intellect, if he suspects a Divine mystery and puts such things to My wisdom and omnipotence; death of faith if he would say: 'If the fact were authentic, not only four but a hundred historians would have to agree on the same thing completely in number, in manner, in words and in everything in general. But each of the four writers says something completely different. Which one is right? No one! So I don't believe anything either!'

25. Behold, neither mind nor faith should be killed! But how can this be done? I tell you: Only through love, humility, gentleness and patience.

26. When these four become one in man, then also the living light will come in greatest quantity into the heart, in which all contradictions will be solved! Pay attention to this, and you too will find clarity. But if you want to be My treasure diggers with your intellect, indeed, you are to find nothing but garbish! Because My gifts are only for the heart, but not for the mind for the time being! But whoever wants to awaken his heart through understanding, let him be assured that he is only killing it, for no love is weaker than that of understanding!

27. But who wants to overcome life, love and believe - gently and patiently and do not demand

an untimely account from Me as from a bad trustee, because true children love the father and do not quarrel with him! Understand that properly.

CHAPTER 22

Criticism of Father's Dictates

Franz Schumi writes:
Father Jesus announces through Ida Kg. that He Himself allowed the dictations to contain offensive material, so that the world would bump into Him and be annoyed, as once the Jews were. 'But blessed are those who are not offended by Me!'

Revelation through Ida Kg:

30 May 1893

1. Regarding your desire to serve Me by wanting to subject My newly given word to a cleaning and clothe it in a more pleasing form, I tell you: Your will is good - but that is not My will, because if I wanted it, then I would have given it Myself already.

2. I want the world to bump into Me and be annoyed - it is not to recognize Me before I want it and before I have prepared it for My coming.

3. As long as outward appearances still separate the ones who are Mine from Me, they are also not worth it, because [they are] spiritually not mature to hear My Divine word directly from Me - they who wants to bump against Me, will anyway bump against Me - he who knows Me and loves Me, does not bump into what is human - and I allowed it, so that the world does not recognize Me - before [it's] time. For when it would hear My word and know that it is from Me and still not live and act according to it, then it would already be judged and would find spiritual death in My teaching, which is supposed to announce life!

4. And see, as I at the time when I walked on earth spoke in parables because of those who did not believe in Me, so that they should get angry with Me and turn their backs on Me (because they were still too immature for My word), so also now this My word is an incomprehensible riddle to the world, which cannot solve it with all their wisdom, because I want it thus!

5. And see - that is why also you are now not to change anything but leave it standing unadulterated as I give it to you. The world bumps into the roughness of it - but you who have already recognized Me by My Fatherly voice - stand still and think in the heart about the meaning of My words and receive in yourself the spirit in pure truth, but not the smoothly polished word.

6. This I say to you, My child, in answer to your questions - but also to all of you who are afflicted with the same suffering - bodily as well as spiritually - and I give you all My blessing. Amen.

22.1 Renewed warning to critics of the new Word

Father Jesus admonishes again through Ida Kg. not to criticize His holy words, because they were not given to criticize and build hell out of them, but to find the Spirit of eternal life in them.

Jesus says through Ida Kg.

4 December 1903

1. To all those who read this book, it must be said that these are not the words of men, but the words of God, so abstain from judgement, lest you judge yourselves. Whoever lacks the right knowledge to grasp these My Divine words for what it is, keep silent and pray to God for the right knowledge and such knowledge will soon be given to him; But if the Father has opened the heart to understand the great mysteries of God, he is not content with pure knowledge, because God does not reveal Himself to man for the sake of knowledge, but only that they convert with all their heart and arrange their life according to His word and will. Whoever hears this My speech and does it, I compare him with a wise man who built his house on a rock, thus says the Lord, Who is God, who reveals Himself as Father to His children who are of good will and heart.

2. That is why every one has to test himself whether he seeks to become a true child of God with earnest will and a sincere heart, because to only those God makes himself a Father - to those who love Him and do His will; but to those whose mind is hardened, He will remain the almighty God and Judge of all their works.

3. Therefore - blessed are all who let themselves be drawn by the Father, Who is the purest love of God. So understand these words and consider their exact meaning, so that condemnation does not overtake you, but that you all become free from the judgement of spiritual death and you all achieve eternal life from God, the Father of eternal love!

Amen.

CHAPTER 23

FATHER JESUS' DIVINE WILL FOR THE READING OF THE BIBLE

19 June 1904

1. My dear children! The reading of My books, be it the Bible or Christian Theosophical books, is recommended to you so that you do not bump into the shell which only contains the core, for this is My will that you should be humbly believing like children in the reading of My books, for My teaching tells you: "Unless you become like children, you will not enter the kingdom of heaven". Another verse again says: "Unless you take the kingdom of heaven by force, you will not enter it." What does that mean? Behold, this means that you shall accept what is offered with a childlike mind, which is full of faith and good will.

2. The question is, how are you going to enjoy what is presented to you? Now I ask: What does Paul say about reading the Bible verses? Paul teaches that the letter, as the outer material shell of the spiritual inner core, kills - and that only the spirit, as the inner core of what is offered, animates.

3. But I, Jesus, say even more: "The kernel, when it is eaten, feeds you!" What's that supposed to mean? Behold, what this means is this: the shell is the covering of the kernel which must be enjoyed, that is: You must turn what you have found through the spirit out of the literal sense into the living deed - only this will be rewarded, for neither for the literal sense, nor for the spiritual sense of the word, but only for living and acting according to the spiritual sense of the teaching, will you be granted eternal life; never for reading and understanding the teaching!

4. Now comes the second question: How are you to understand the teaching that you will earn heaven with it? See, this question is highly important and therefore worth all attention. **In order to know what the spiritual core in the book is, it is necessary that you look at the teaching with the love of the heart and find out what in the bowl - or in the letters - is the heavenly core, in which the food for the Kingdom of Heaven lies.** Now how do you find out this heavenly core? You will not find it in the stories, nor in the side-stories, but **only in the greatest commandment of God, which is in love.** If you love God above all, you will strive never to offend Him, but always and ever to fulfill His will.

5. So **through this love for God, you will also love His children as much as you love yourselves, so always strive to do to them what you would reasonably wish that they would do to you when you would need them and therefore never do to them what you do not wish that they do to you.**

6. This then is the core of all teaching, which includes eternal life in itself for the one who fulfils the teaching of My *Ten Commandments*, My other words and the *Prayer Book*. For this I have had the *Prayer Book* written and handed out to you, that you may watch and pray and not judge My gifts wiser than I do Myself.

7. Your cunning [way] out of the Holy Scriptures against My teaching -since you understand the Bible far too materially - is directed against My will. Therefore I am now having the *Prayer Book* published in a third edition, considerably increased with explanations, so that you can for once understand what I want from you! Without approaching Me in humility and prayer, I am an inaccessible God to you despite being "Father", because you show no reverence for My

holiness! To fulfill My commandments and humbly pray to Me, is My teaching to you all, without exception.

8. Do not therefore make your own teachings! Do not wangle your own rules of conduct out of the Holy Scriptures against Me - which you interpret far too erroneously, i.e. you take out what suits you - but you leave standing as calmly as if it was not at all in the Bible, especially that what I teach.

9. Read the doctrine of J*ustification before God*[78] to see that Martin Luther has completely misunderstood it! You are free to believe Me, Christ, or Martin Luther - but the consequences will be your harvest! *The guidance of M. Luther and Swedenborg in the hereafter* with the true doctrine of J*ustification before God*, is for the Protestants the book of conversion from their misconceptions of the Bible. The book has been printed since the year 1902, but one has no desire for it, but one brandishes Me, Christ, as a heretic that it is not from God!

10. And you want to be children of God and go to heaven?! No! I say, first you must become believers and humble before God, your Father in Jesus - this is My will! You are to buy the book because I dictated and had it written for you to bring you out of the great error of false faith. If you do not want to read My words, do not listen to them and do not obey them, then you will also not get to see Me in the spirit kingdom. What you sow, you shall reap! For My time is here. I will put order in the world, I will gather My flock. But he who does not recognize Me, the chief Shepherd, by My voice, but brandishes Me as a heretic, well, he will go where he has headed out to!

11. But I will have mercy on you when you will heed My words, otherwise you are your own judges as you do not acknowledge Me as Judge and then I can do nothing with the best will in the world. Your faith will judge you. Amen.

*

12. So I also have a word to say to you, Roman Catholics. It has been established with you that unless a book is appraised by the Bishop in the name of the Pope on the title page, you must not read it, be it the Holy Scripture or any other religious book.

13. In the Holy Scriptures of the New Testament are excerpts from the teachings and deeds of My three years of teaching, which the apostles and evangelists left in writing. You will now be dissuaded to read these My former principles of the Christian religion, which I, your God and Saviour in Jesus taught Myself - and to read My present Christian Theosophical books will be forbidden, as they are heretical according to papal dogmas or human statutes, because the truth is spreading!

14. Well, if the Pope is your infallible commander, then I, Jesus, your God and Saviour of Golgotha, am a heretic - then you have nothing to do with Me!

15. I live with My children in heaven. But where will those go who thunder against Me in books, magazines and on pulpits and even take up authority against Me to enforce their self-made church laws, ceremonies and human statutes against Me, to present Jesus Christ as heretic, that I do not need to tell you – [they do] not [come] to Me, as I can not have them like that – and where they lead you who believe their human statutes – that it is not to Me, you can easily guess, for there is only heaven and hell in the spirit kingdom! Behold! This is your salvation when the teachings I am presenting to you in Christian Theosophical books are considered heretical; I have told you - act accordingly if you do not want to wander down those paths! Amen.

*

16. Although it says in the Bible: "God judges no-one, God punishes no-one", it does say that the Father (as the Love in God) has given all judgement to the Son; but the Son is the Wisdom in God - but the latter has put the reward for obeying the law, but the punishment for acting contrary to it, into the Word itself.

17. There is a lot of evidence in the Old Testament that God's Wisdom punishes (see the magazine *Love* I. page 60). In the New Testament there is a great deal of natural, elemental and world events that I let arise in the world as punishment to make people better, and so it is also now. Look into the world, what a lot of misfortunes the newspapers report daily!

18. And yet you want to see nothing, hear nothing, know nothing that it is from Me, because you rather believe the false prophets and anti-Christs than Me! But I will come at you very hard, then it will be different. I will see whether you will still acknowledge a God above you or not! It's either, or! Remember that! These are words from Me, your God in Christ, whom many of you no longer want to acknowledge as God!

*

23.1. Comments on explanation of human errors

Schumi writes:

17 July 1904, Zurich.

1. Seeing how we stand with the words of eternal life offered to us, no-one should be angry with the Divine mediums if they bring any falsehood as a secondary accompaniment to the core of the truth of the Word of God.

2. The medium was perhaps quite innocent that he reported an untruth here or there by the permission of God. It is indeed the same with the apostles Peter and Paul, that they bring about religious inaccuracies, of which the *Luther* book (ChtS. No. 64) about Paul; in the book: *Christ and the Church (vol3)* under the keyword 'Baptism' but about Peter[79] even huge errors are proven. As was the case with Martin Luther - he even rejected the Ten Commandments of God - (read the justification before God in the *Luther* book) which Christ came to fulfill (Matt 5:17) and also the love of the neighbour,[80] (explained in the justification doctrine of the *Luther* book) when Jesus Himself told the scribe: 'Go and practice charity as the Samaritan did, yes, He calls this commandment the greatest commandment in the Law of God through Moses'. (Matt 7:12; 22:39-40)

3. I, Schumi, have done what I could do to spread pure teaching, but can I not help it if my predecessors, be it in the Bible or the mediums of God recorded incorrect things and I retell them *bona fide* or in good faith as pure truth? In the Holy Scripture it says: "To the pure all things are pure". But since we are in the time of the fight of truth against the lie, therefore it is our task to get the truth (or the wheat) out of the lie (or the chaff) but, and I, Schumi, will strive to do this where It is commanded and possible, because I am under the same commandment of faith as the apostles and Lorber, Mayerhofer and many others were.

4. Seek the wheat together with me and separate the chaff from it in love, humility and insight, because nothing in the world is perfect - and we will reach eternal life. Therein lies the struggle: to seize the kingdom of heaven by force, to hold firmly to the core of truth by the force of unbending faith, and to fight vigorously against all the contradictions of rational wisdom that arise against it, and to emerge victorious from the struggle.

5. Believe me, I myself am in this struggle, for I see many things that many have not yet noticed, and yet I do not let up and [will] do as Peter once did when Jesus asked the 12 disciples who were left of the 70 after the speech at Capernaum: 'Will you also leave Me?' (since I taught what was unsuitable for your worldly mind) To which Peter replied: 'Lord, where are we going, for You are Christ, Who has the words of eternal life.' (John 1:41; Matt 16:16) and Who is eternal life (John 14:6).

*

23.2 Qoutes of passages to reach the Light of Truth

I. (Graz, June 23, 1902 from "Annunciations of Jesus Our Father", 2nd vol. page 19) I warn you to not attack My teaching with your wisdom because it will bring darkness to you - for all those who examine and criticize My teaching - which is to be understood spiritually - with the wisdom of the intellect and criticize it, get into the area of spiritual darkness, which is the spirit of Satan of worldliness who suggests to them completely wrong views. You want to know the truth about individual verses from the Bible, about Christian-Theosophical mediums and whether their dictations are from God - therefore truth - then get rid of all wisdom of mind and come to Me, your Father in Jesus, in humility and deepest love and pray and ask for enlightenment in the matter until it is given to you - because the way of wisdom of the mind leads into the darkness of hell. But the humble petition Me in the Divine Light of truth. Verily, I say unto you: Only those become children of God who humbly and lovingly let themselves be led and guided by Me!

*

II. That the teachings which the apostles wrote are not copies from other books, but original reports from that time, the apostle Peter assures you by saying: "We have not followed wise fables in telling you the power and the future of our Lord Jesus Christ, but we have seen His glory ourselves in that He received glory and honour from God the Father: 'This is My beloved Son in whom I am well pleased.'

III. And this voice we heard from heaven, when we were with Him on the holy mountain." (Tabor, 2 Peter 1:16).

IV. Furthermore, Peter says about the truth of the apostolic records: "We (apostles) have a firm prophetic word, and you do well if you pay attention to it, as to a light that shines in a dark place until the day dawns and the morning star rises in your heart (2 Peter 1:18).

V. Paul justifies his teaching with the following words: I bear witness to this, brothers! The Gospel I proclaimed is not the work of man, for I have not received it from people, nor learned it, but through the revelation of Jesus Christ (namely, through the inner word) - (Gal. 1:11,12).

VI. Paul curses every other gospel that does not come from Christ by saying: "But if we (Paul and my fellow propagators of the gospel known to you) or (allegedly) an angel from heaven preaches a different gospel to you than the one we preached to you, let him be cursed! As we have just said, so I say again, whoever presents to you a different gospel from the one you receive (through us) is cursed! (Gal. 1:8,9)

With this statement Paul not only cursed the false teachers who appeared in his time, but even in advance the whole fabrication of the false teachings of the anti-Christian Holy Spirit. (There cannot be an "anti-Christian Holy Spirit"! It must surely be called "anti-Christian spirit")

CHAPTER 24

PROOF THAT THE WORDS OF THE BIBLE ARE WORDS OF GOD

1. That the prophets wrote only at My command, is proved by the following verses of the prophets:

1. Isaiah 34:16: "Look for the book of Jehovah and read: For it is He who commands through my mouth, and it is His Spirit who brings it together."

2. Ezekiel 12:7,8 - Early in the morning, the word of Jehovah came to me and I did as I was commanded.

3. Ezekiel 24:18,20 - I did as I was commanded (by Jehovah) - Jehovah spoke to me, etc.

4. Ezekiel 37:7,10 - I prophesied as I was commanded (by Jehovah)

2. The especially clear demonstration that I, Jesus, as Jehovah, commanded the prophets to say or do this or that, comes from these verses:

I. Jeremiah 26:2 He says, "Thus speaks Jehovah: "Enter into the court of the house of Jehovah and preach to all the cities of Judah that enter therein to worship in the house of Jehovah, all the words that I have commanded you to say to them; and do not do a word of them."

II. Jeremiah 50:21 - Go up against the land (Babylon)... against the inhabitants of the visitation; devastate and desolate and banish their descendants, says Jehovah, and do all that I have commanded you.

III. In the first epistle to the Corinthians (1:17) Paul says: Christ has sent me to preach the gospel.

IV. 1 Corinthians 9:16,17 - Paul confesses, "I cannot boast of preaching the gospel, for I must do it. If I do it gladly, I am rewarded; but if I do it unwillingly, I am commanded to do it." By which he meant to say that he preaches not of his own will, but because the Spirit of God drives him to it.

V. 2 Cor 5:20 - Paul explicitly confesses that I, Christ, use them as My instruments through which I work, for Paul says: "So now we are ambassadors in Christ's place, for God admonishes (people) through us."

VI. In the Epistle to Galatians (1:1) it says: "Paul, an apostle not of man, neither by man, but through Jesus Christ and God the Father." By which he testified that God Himself had chosen and taught him the true word of the gospel which he had to preach.

VII. In 2 Peter 1:20-21 says Peter: "And this you should firstly know that in the Scriptures, there is no prophecy by own interpretation, but "holy" (righteous men who served God) have spoken, driven by the Holy Spirit who spoke through them.

*

(I, Schumi, have already written several prophecies that are printed in the books I published, and I point out to you that each time I have received them as dictated to me, they were given to me with a particular emphasis and force of expression).

*

3. These proofs from the Holy Scriptures testify that these pious men did not write of their own will and wisdom, but that I spoke through them and commanded them what they should do and speak.

4. In 1 Cor 2:45, Paul says: "My word and My preaching are not in the sound speeches of human wisdom, but in proof of the Holy Spirit and the power of God, that your faith may be based not on the wisdom of man, but on the power of God."

5. The available proofs from the writings of the prophets and apostles give you the testimony of truth that you have in these men such people before you with whom I, God, spoke and ordered them to carry out My holy will.

6. When you now read the scriptures which originate from them, then you obtain the conviction that they far surpass human knowledge, because they contain the supernatural which no-one can properly decipher without inspiration from above or the direct Divine word. Where else would these men have taken such words from, which often mean something quite different from what the letter indicates?

7. On the other hand there are writings which show hundreds and thousands of years in advance the history of the world in words of correspondence, without you being able to get to the foundation of the core of the words before it has come true, but then it turns out that everything literally came true as it was written.

8. These facts may suffice for you not to deny due respect to the book of Divine revelations and prophecies! Because how do you know what this or that means? How do you know why it is written like this and not otherwise? Who gives you assurance that your judgements are truth if you cannot interpret the book spiritually? *Noli me tangere!* i.e. "do not touch Me!" I said on Resurrection Day, and the uncalled critic shout an appeal: *Ne sutor supra crepidam!* That is – translated to German: [English – Tr.] "Cobbler, stay at your anvil!" Therefore, little children, do not criticize the words of Holy Scripture because they are holy to him who has the grace from Me to be able to interpret them. From the most difficult passages of the Bible often the most beautiful and greatest secrets come to light, which I therefore shrouded in such a deep darkness of correspondence to cover them up from the folly of the overly wise, who are an abomination before Me - because they only work hell and punishment out of the other world when they deliver a sample of their wisdom from it!

9. Leave this holy book, the contents of which are mostly about Me, God Myself, alone - because I have chosen other men for it to explain it properly to My children, than the wise and clever of the world (1 Cor 1:19).

10. It is well remembered that I, God, nowhere demanded attendance of a university for the attainment of Divine graces, but only the fulfillment of My holy will. High school knowledge is to be honoured; before God alone it has not the least value, if the high virtues of Jesus do not adorn man. (Printed in the Christian Theosophical *Prayer Book*)

11. Consider the disciple John whom I, Jesus, called My beloved. He was the son of poor fisherman-parents, his education was that of a pupil of the fourth normal school - nothing more, he was an apprentice and then a carpenter with the foster father Joseph, and - who of the wise

and prudent of this world can unravel the heavenly language of correspondences of his Divine Revelation! Nobody! And what is the content of this secretive writing? Behold, the history and its development in the children of the world from then to now and further into the distant future.

12. And why did the prophets and John arrive at this high language? They fulfilled the will of God; they were full of love, humility and high virtues and I looked at them favourably and spoke through them in heavenly language to the people, so that they would not take the holiness of My Word when they, the dead in spirit, would dare to investigate and criticise these sublime prophecies and revelations with their dark wisdom and bring dung - which is not in it - out of the gold, to the light.

CHAPTER 25

Biblical Evidence of the Inner Word

1. The inner word is the so-called "prophetic word" of which Peter speaks. (1 Thess 2:13; 2 Peter 1:19) This Word proceeds from the Father and the Son and speaks through the Holy Spirit, who today dictates and speaks the Divine teachings and prophecies through the Divine or Father's mediums, as He once spoke through prophets and as was given to the apostles at the baptism of Pentecost. Evidence of this is provided by the following passages taken from Holy Scripture.

2. The prophets already wrote the words of My Divine wisdom in the old times because My spirit drove them to it. You see these in the fulfilled prophecies about the countries Egypt, Babylonia, Phoenicia and Palestine, and you also see in My life that every prophecy literally came true and was fulfilled. However, many prophecies have never been considered exactly because people could not interpret them. You can be certain that the prophets were very piously living men through which I as the Father of mankind could speak with them and through them give prophecies and life-teachings for all people. They were therefore the representatives of My Divine will on earth, since I, Jehovah, spoke to My people through them and ruled the people through them. That this is based on truth is shown by the following extracts from the letters of the prophets.

3. I, Jesus, said to the disciples of Cleophas and Barsabas 'Justus': “Oh fools, you are lazy in heart to believe all that the prophets have spoken.” (Luke 24:25). This reproach also applies today to all those who do not believe the words of the prophets and apostles and prefer to walk the road to Emmaus, which is the road of doubt and unbelief.

I. Psalm 50:7,13-15 (year 1043 B.C.) I, Jesus, spoke as Jehovah through the prophet David: "Hear My people, let Me speak: 'Israel! I, God, am your God! You think I want to eat ox meat or drink goat's blood? Sacrifice thanksgiving to God and keep your vows to the Most High and call on Me in the days of trouble, I will save you and you shall praise Me'.”

II. The king and prophet David said, "The Spirit of the Lord has spoken through me, and His speech has come through my tongue. David also said, "The God of Israel has spoken to me” (II Samuel 23:2-3) ... that is, Jehovah spoke to him as a man speaks to people. In the same way it is happening today when I, God, simply speak with My instrument.

III. Isaiah 37:26,27 - Have you not heard that I (Jehovah) have done such things long before and prepared them from the days of old? Now I have caused it to come that strong cities will be destroyed into heaps of stones. And its inhabitants become weak, ashamed and dismayed. This prophecy came to make them believe in what I, Jehovah, announced through prophets in advance.

IV. Isaiah 48:3 - Jehovah speaks through the mouth of the prophet: "I have proclaimed the former things long ago; out of My mouth they came forth, I made them known; suddenly I carried them out, and they came to pass.

V. Isaiah 51:16 - In this verse I, Jehovah, said to the prophet, "I put My words in your mouth.”

VI. To the prophet Jeremiah I, Jehovah, said the same: "Behold, I put My words in your mouth." (Jer 1:19).

VII. Through Matthew 10:20 I said, "It is not you who speak, but it is the Spirit of your Father (Jesus) who speaks in you."

VIII. Luke 10:16 - I, Jesus Jehovah, said: "He who hears you (when you preach My Gospel!) he hears Me. He who despises you (therefore) despises Me, but he who despises Me, despises Him who sent Me." (namely God, the eternal Love as Father in My heart)

IX. John 14:16-18 - I, Jesus, said at the last supper: I will ask the Father (i.e. the love in God (1 John 4:8,16)) and He will give you another helper who will always stay with you; [17] Namely the Spirit of Truth ... and it will be with you and within you. [18] I will not leave you orphans, for I am coming to you. (With this I, Jesus, wanted to say: for as God I am the Spirit of Truth Myself, since there is no other Spirit of Truth but God [John 14:16; Dan 4:34]).

X. (26) But the Comforter, the Holy Spirit (of truth), whom the Father (or love in God) will send in My (i.e. the wisdom of God) name, He will teach you everything and remind you of everything I have told you.

XI. John 15:26 - But when the Comforter will come, whom I will send (through Me) from the Father, the Spirit of Truth, who proceeds from the Father (or from Love in God), He will testify about Me (by which I meant to say: because in My name you will heal the sick, cast out devils and work various things that will not be possible for other people).

XII. John 16:12 - I still have much to say to you, but you cannot carry (or remember) it now. 13. But when He - that is the Spirit of truth shall come, He shall guide you into all truth. But He will not speak of Himself, but what He will hear (from the Father and the Son, whose outflow He is (John 14:16,26; 15:26; 14:18; 16:13-15), He will speak, and what is to come (which is decided and will happen in God, He will announce (or prophesy) to you.

XIII. After Luke 12:11,12 - I, Jesus, said to My disciples: "But when they will lead you into their synagogues and before the authorities and before the violent ones, do not worry how or what you should answer or what you should say, for the Holy Spirit will teach you what you should say in that same hour.

XIV. Acts 9:5,10,11,17 - In the conversion story of the apostle Paul, you read: "And the disciple Ananias went to Damascus and came into the house and laid his hands on him and said: Dear brother Saul, the Lord (who appeared to you on the road when you came here and answered you: "I am Jesus whom you are persecuting)", has sent me that you may see again and be filled with the Holy Spirit.' At that time Paul received the baptism of the Holy Spirit and with it, the inner word (Father of Jesus' Word).

CHAPTER 26

The Baptism of Fire of the Holy Spirit to have the Divine Word

1. … which was given to the apostles at Pentecost is described as follows: 'And quickly there came a sound from heaven as of a rushing mighty wind, and it filled all the house where they sat. And there appeared unto them tongues divided as of fire: and it sat upon each one of them; whereupon they were all filled with the Holy Spirit, and began to speak with other tongues according to the gift of the Spirit. The people came together and were amazed that everyone heard the words in his mother-tongue in which he was born. Since the preachers were merely from Galilee and yet spoke in various foreign languages (which they never learned), the listeners were shocked and startled and spoke one to another: What should this mean? Then Peter presented to them the prophecies of the prophets which illuminated the great event of the day (Acts 2:1-36).

2. Furthermore you read in Acts 10:1-46 - While Peter was still speaking the words to the captain Cornelius in Caesarea, the Holy Spirit fell upon all who listened to the word. And (the Judeo-Christians) who had come with Peter were astonished that the gift of the Holy Spirit had been poured out on the Gentiles as well; for they heard that they spoke in strange tongues and glorified God.

3. In 1 Cor 2:10 Paul says: God has revealed to us (the apostles) through His Spirit who searches all things, even the depths of the Godhead.

4. Paul writes about the inner word: "But I declare to you, brethren, that the gospel which is of me is not human. For I have neither received nor learned it from any man, but I have it through the revelation of Jesus Christ." Because the inner word is higher than the enlightenment for understanding the spiritual meaning of the words of the Bible, but Paul possessed the gifts and graces of the Holy Spirit, as did the other apostles, which is shown by his miraculous healings, etc., so "revelation" is to be understood as the words of God spoken by Paul through the prophetic inner word.

5. Paul received this Word of God after being healed by Ananias from his blindness, through Me, Jesus. Paul was so firmly convinced of the truthfulness of the inner word he spoke, that he pronounced the decisive words: "But if we, or even an angel from heaven, preached the gospel to you differently from what we preached to you, he is cursed." (Gal 1:8) Then he repeats that his gospel is based on truth, saying: "But what I tell you (of the gospel), God knows that I am not lying." (Gal 1:20) This remark of Paul is correct, but every now and then he said something also from his own point of view, without asking Me, Jesus, for clarification - and so also Paul (like Peter) is not everywhere in the clear (as is clearly verified in the *Luther* book and also proved in *Baptism*)[81]. But because of this - because of individual offences, the child is not to be poured out with the bath water (as useless, unreliable), because no-one is infallible, (Matt 19:17; Rev 15:4) but God alone!

6. In the Letters to the Galatians 2:2 you can see that the revelations of which Paul spoke are nothing other than the Word of God, which God speaks inwardly, in the heart of the soul (of which I, Schumi, am myself a witness of the truth through Father Jesus, since I clearly hear in me, as if spoken to me by another person - hear the Word of God, for I am passive, think nothing, but only listen and write down when it is spoken or dictated for all people as children of God). Paul said in the mentioned

place: “But I went up to Jerusalem the second time as a result of a revelation.” (Gal 2:1,2) How this revelation happened, you can see from Acts 23:11 - "But the next day, at night, the Lord stood with him and said: 'Be confident, Paul; for as you have testified of Me in Jerusalem, so you must also testify in Rome'.” Luke, the Evangelist, says that the Lord stood with him, but in this Luke is mistaken - who, by the way, had no inner word - but I, Jesus, spoke inwardly to Paul.

7. In the letter to the Ephesians, Paul writes about the mystery of Christ, which happened to him through revelation, which was unknown in previous times, because only now Jesus revealed it to His apostles and prophets through the (Holy) Spirit (Eph 3:2-5)

8. The most enlightened apostle and the one who penetrated most deeply into the depths of the mysteries of God was the disciple John, who was highly gifted because of his great love for Me, which is testified to you by the beginning of his Gospel as well as by the Revelation, which only John understood in its correspondences, since this was given to him because of his great love for Me and the neighbour, as the award of God's grace. He says at the beginning of Revelation 1:1,3 - “This is the Revelation of Jesus Christ, which God gave to Him, John, to show His servants what is to happen in a short time; and has interpreted and sent them through His angel to His servant John. - Blessed is he that reads, and they that hear the words of prophecy, and keep those things which are written therein.”

9. The great revelation that John had to write comprises of 22 chapters, of which he reports the following: "I, John, who am also your brother and comrade in the tribulation and in the kingdom and birth of Jesus Christ, I was in the Spirit on the Lord's day, and heard behind me a great voice saying: 'I am the Alpha and the Omega, the first and the last, and what you see, write it in a book and send it to the churches in Asia to Ephesus and to Smyrna and to Pergamus and to Thyatira and to Sardis and to Philadelphia and to Laodicea.' And I turned to look for the voice that talked to me. And when I turned, I saw one like a Son (i.e. a prophet, as the herald of the Divine Word), clothed with a long robe and girded around his chest with a golden belt. His head and His hair was like white wool, like snow, and His eyes like a flame of fire, and His feet like brass burning in a furnace, and His voice like the sound of great waters, having seven stars in His right hand (i.e. seven Divine virtues (Printed in the *Christian Theosophical Prayer Book*) in His governmental order); and out of His mouth went a sharp double-edged sword (i.e. the word of Eternal Truth from Divine Love and Wisdom), and His face shone like the bright sun. And when I saw Him (namely Jesus), I fell at His feet as a dead man (or "sinner"); and He laid His right hand on me and spoke to me: 'Fear not, I am the First and the Last and the Living (i.e. the life principle). I was dead (on the cross) and behold, I am alive from Eternity to eternity and have the keys of hell and death. Write what you have seen and what is there and what is to happen after that',” etc. - What John then laid down in the hieroglyphics of Revelation.

10. These few lines tell very clearly where John got the literal sense of his revelation from - it was the Divine Love and Wisdom in Me, Jesus, that gave him the revelation in pictures of the Divine correspondence, because John would not possibly have taken this secret language out of himself, because he has never heard it in this great light of the mystery of God, and exactly this is the full proof that it is supernatural - for up to this day, no-one has been able to interpret it completely right.

11. Peter is particularly clear about the inner word, what it is, saying: "We have a firm prophetic word, and you do well to pay attention to it, as to a light that shines in a dark place until the day dawns and the morning star (of inner illumination) arises in your hearts" (2 Peter 1:19).

*

When I, Schumi, gave the *Luther* Book in to be printed, I still had a debt of 20 crowns (Austrian currency) on the booklet *"Die Kundgaben*" [The Announcements/Instructions/revelations], and besides that, there were only 368 marks left to be collected; but on September 20, 1902, Father Jesus told me that the money (about 1400 marks) would be there before I would need it, and Jehovah in Jesus kept His word, for it happened that I got the money without having to guess where it would come from, and it happened just as Father Jesus repeated the promise to me on December 19.

*

Jesus continues:

12. Excerpts from the writings of the prophets and apostles tell you that these men wrote by the inner word of the Holy Spirit and not from their own heads. Even if every now and then a coarse word came along and seems to be ungodly, this is to be put on the account of the rough time of the then conditions of life, but not to mock God for it, because the prophets were also only ordinary people, even if pious and devoted to God.

13. These men as well as also the apostles would certainly not have dared to consciously write down the least word as a lie and when it happens that something is wrong, then they should not be attacked, because they do not know the cause why the error arose, especially with the evangelists, since nobody except John was a witness of My activity what is explained to you in the given messages.

14. The writers of the Bible were all serious men, having reverence for God, humility and a great love for God and man - hence the flowering of mankind in those days. You call them "holy men", but they were not holy. Because no-one is holy except God, as can be seen from two passages of the New Testament, but men who you can call true servants of God, since they have been aiming all their lives to serve God in all love and humility.

15. In the future Bible - that I, Jesus, promised - the passages of the Bible that are not from God [will be] removed from it, or [those which was] inserted as untruth, etc., will be identified and the truth will be made known and how to understand it.[82] (This prophecy, which Jesus Jehovah made me write here under my name, - is also found in the *Luther Book*. I wrote them here and there at His behest.)

CHAPTER 27

THE ORIGIN OF THE BIBLE IS LOST AND FOUND[83] IN THE CHRONICLES OF TIME

1. The name of the Almighty God is the slogan of the present time. Mankind is in a time of struggle between light and darkness, because people have drunk the poison of God-denying wisdom of the mind and have thus become dead in the spirit of their love for God and their neighbour and have therefore fallen into all vices giving evidence of their backwards wisdom.[84]

2. But there is still a God who guides the destiny of the world, He is still the same God of whom the Scriptures give such glorious proofs of His love and wisdom, and therefore it is the task of human beings to gather together around this God who has personally put the stamp of truth on world-history, because there is no longer a question of whether there is a God, but you can refer to irrefutable evidence and say: we have here before us evidence that no man can erase and destroy. Here is a holy book of Divine prophecies, it is the Bible of the Old and New Testament, it is the book with which many dark powers have used their equally dark brains against the proven truth to strip and rob it of its sanctity. But their sinister display of power and their efforts against this holy Book was in vain, for the truth of its words shines before us in new glory, and now the time has come to show you right here before you, this holiness - and to lift the dark veil that is spread over the prophecies through history and to show the truth in its sublime sanctity.

3. The story of this book began high up in the primeval times of the human race. It began at the beginning of the tenth century (It was in 919 when Jehovah was with the Adamites, whom they induced to appear through their great love, where He spoke to them for a long time through the body of an angel from another world, teaching them, and staying in their company; (because God can only be made to appear through great love) there were written records dealing with the creation of the world and the human race, since Jehovah gave the letter-characters to the Adamites. But these records got lost in the storm of time and rest hidden in the earth of Japan, but in the near future they will bear witness as visible monuments to the past of Divine rule on earth.

4. But in the minds of the primitive people these records were not completely lost, but they lived on, albeit often disfigured by the darkening of the spirit and therefore the hyroglyphic and cuneiform inscriptions. Until 1854 the Assyriologists Layard, Loftus, Hormuzd Rassam and G. Smith[86] (John Urquhart, T*he new discoveries and the Bible* 1, 30; - Graßmann, *Place and time of the Biblical history of the Old Testament*, page 37) in the ruins of Nineveh (in the present Kujundschik) the library of cuneiform inscriptions engraved in clay was found, which were collected by King Assurbanipal from the temple archives of the Babylonian Empire between 668 and 626 BC. According to these documents of Babylon and Nineveh, we learn that in 1656 after the creation of Adam - or in 2495 B.C. - the period of time when engraved documents were made in Egypt, neither the Assyrian nor the Babylonian empires had a flood, but according to these documents, the flood (Sin [Sünd-] and not sin [sint-] or general flood is spelled correctly because there was no general flood. - This is how the twisting of the Bible word is gradually illuminated) took place in Georgia alone[87,88] and is described in the same way as Moses[89] reports it. (Graßmann, Aaltes Testament, p. 37; - whose Gesch. I, 58-292. - Urquhart. 1- Bd- *The discoveries and the Bible*.")

*

Schumi's comment

These cuneiform inscriptions, engraved in clay and found in the Lion Room of the Royal Palace of Nineveh, are now preserved in the British Museum in London. Now we look at a source which is the direct Word of God, but which has no connection whatsoever with the science of the learned ancient scholars of the world.

In the years 1840 to 1864 there lived in Graz a poor but excellent musician named Jakob Lorber, he was the reincarnated archangel Raphael[90], and this Raphael is the original priest of God, named Enoch, who, as is well known[91], did not die but attained the second rebirth like Elijah and was transformed into spirit. The father of Enoch was the well-known patriarch Jared during Adam's lifetime. But this Jared is the archangel Gabriel, who brought the Divine message to the mother of Jesus, Mary.

This Enoch-Raphael-Lorber wrote between 1842 and 1844 The *Household of God* or *The primeval Creation*, in which it is stated that the flood of sin over the primeval city of Hanoch with its 500 suburbs and 12 million inhabitants lay where the Caspian Sea and the Aral Sea now are spread out (this is the statement of Father Jesus). Lorber wrote this at a time when no other historical source was known other than the creation story of Moses. The mere fact that both reports deny the general world flood and move it to Russian-Asia has something in itself that the learned world will have to take into account. Because the *Household of God* by Lorber is a book of which every logically thinking person must say that something like this stands high above the abilities of human reason; something so unusual, and wrapped in such high corresponding pictures, which human reason cannot grasp at all without Divine enlightenment, only God is able to dictate and write such.

Lorber wrote only books of esoteric and supernatural content directly dictated by God. Of the many glorious writings of Lorber - but whose author is God - the following are to be especially emphasized: In addition to the *Household of God*, there is the *Material Sun* with its 7 sun belts which, through its inner creation, represents the tremendous wisdom and omnipotence of God in their creation. Then follows *Saturn*, as it is inwardly constituted, furthermore the *Spiritual Sun* with the description of the heavens and the spiritual conditions in the hereafter. The *Spiritual Sun* shows more than clearly that its content far surpasses the human imagination. Finally follow the 10 thick volumes of the original *Gospel* or the so-called *Journal*, which reports all the journeys, teachings, events and miracles of Jesus' three years of teaching.

These books are of such a highly spiritual and supernatural content that any reasonable reader will judge that they far surpass the human capabilities of reason. They are in themselves the irrefutable proofs that Christian Theosophy is not just because God Himself always speaks to people in the first person as "*I, Jesus, your God and Father*", but mainly through the fact of the author's superhuman reasoning, which is a pure and genuine love-teaching of God and Father Jesus Christ. Based on Moses and Egyptian cuneiform inscriptions, "*The Household of God*" at the same time provides glorious proof that Jakob Lorber, who - by the way - stood there as an ordinary person and without highly scientific training, was a true prophet of God and that there is an omniscient God who knows how to tell things that no man has ever heard; for Jakob Lorber ended the *Household of God* ten years before the Egyptian cuneiform inscriptions were reliably deciphered, and the book was printed three years before - according to Grassmann - when (Loftus and) Hormuzd Rassam found the greater number of cuneiform inscriptions in Nineveh.

This is a beautiful proof that Christian Theosophical literature is not a swindle or false doctrine, but a holy doctrine directly dictated by God and given to people to live and act according to.

*

Jesus continues:

5. Now comes the time for the prophetic words of the Bible, which foretold the history of Phoenicia, Egypt, Babylonia and Palestine hundreds and thousands of years in advance.

6. One will now say: Yes, these prophecies were written at the same time when a catastrophe took place, and then they were given an old nimbus because they were presented as to be a prophecy of God that took place so and so many years before. This undue imposition alone can be countered by the fact that 70 wise men of the University of Alexandria in the years 281 - 277 before Christ translated the Holy Scriptures of all Jewish prophets from Moses to that time into Greek and handed them over to the world under the name of Septuagint, thus asserting the truth before the wickedness of the people, since this translation cannot be accused of fraud and deceit. In these writings the truth of the prophetic Word of God shines out with the inextinguishable flames of history for all times of the world, on which you can rely at any time. Therefore these holy proofs of Divine truth are to be examined according to their contents in order to lay down with them once and forever, a firm foundation of genuine faith on which the salvation of the soul is to be built. Now we go on to the examination of truth.

27.1 Territorial and historical evidence in Phoenicia about Tyre and Sidon

7. In the land of Phoenicia, which bordered on Galilee and Syria, on the shore of the Mediterranean Sea once lay the city of Tyre, of which the prophet Ezekiel - who received the prophecies between 594 and 572 before Christ - wrote the following words of God in his book, in the 26th chapter and 13th and 14th verse: "So I will put an end to the sound of your singing … You shalt not be built again." This prophecy has literally come true, for Tyre has disappeared without trace, so that even his former true situation has become unknown. It was first Nebuchadnezzar, the king of Babylon, who devastated the city, and what remained of it 240 years later, Alexander the Great swept away from the earth. In Jesus' time, Tyre was inhabited in ruins as an unsightly place.

5. From Tyre we turn to Sidon, a neighbouring and older city, which had already sunk from its height when Tyre was still in its glory. This city still exists and still has about ten thousand inhabitants[92]. It has its walls, its castle and its ruins.

6. In Ezekiel, chapter 28, verses 20 to 23 contain a prophecy about Sidon, saying, "And I will send pestilence and bloodshed on their streets; and in their midst the slain shall fall by the sword that rages against them from every side; for they shall know that I am Jehovah.

7. This prophecy contains decisive words that the city will be chastised because it forgot God, but a judgement that it will be destroyed, is not in the prophecy. Although it was completely destroyed under Artaxerxes Ochos, the absent citizens came home after performing their trade and rebuilt it, and it still exists today.

*

27.2 Territorial and historical demonstrations in Egypt about Thebes and Memphis

8. Now we look up to the one hundred-tower gate of Thebes, it was the oldest capital of Egypt, rich in all goods and splendidly built. Its population in its greatest bloom was one million and three times one hundred thousand people (according to Father Jesus). It alone fielded 70,000 warriors. But the inhabitants, blinded by their wealth, indulged in luxury and splendour. The way they were inventing with their resourceful minds and their life of vices, tore them down mightily. Therefore the prophet Ezekiel received the following prophecy almost 50 years in advance:

> Ezekiel, chapter 30, verses 14-16: "I, Jehovah, will bring judgement on Thebes. I want to exterminate the people of Thebes. And Thebes shall be torn asunder."

9. And indeed, in the year 525 before Christ, Thebes was turned into ruins by the Persian king Cambyses[93]. The city was rebuilt, but in 85 B.C., the second blow came under the Egyptian king Ptolomew Lathyrus, Cleopatra's grandfather, who razed it to the ground.

10. This gigantic city is a beautiful proof for you of the truth of the Divine word of the Holy Scriptures. The Roman geographer Strabo[94], who visited it in the year 25 before Christ, found the ruins of the city enlivened with villages planted here and there. She, who 60 years earlier was a queen of Egyptian oriental splendour and glory, lay there torn into a number of villages that proved the truth of the prophetic word of the Bible, for she is still torn into a number of 9 villages of torn ruins of the ancient city, as the Word of God proclaimed her fate beforehand.

11. After the downfall of Thebes, another famous city called Memphis arose, which later took the place or rank of Thebes as the capital and had half a million inhabitants in its greatest bloom (according to Father Jesus).

12. It is mentioned in the 30th chapter and 13th verse of the prophet Ezekiel: "I will cut off the idols of 'Noph' (that is Memphis) and destroy the images."

13. This prophecy was made in 578 before Christ; and Strabo, who visited the city in 25 before Christ, found it large and populated, and in size closest to Alexandria, which was then the richest and most magnificent city of Egypt. Strabo speaks of its gods, temples and statues.

14. At the beginning of the seventh century after Christ, Memphis was the residence of the ruler of Egypt. But when the city of Cairo was founded nearby, the inhabitants gradually moved away from the old city and took some of their building materials with them to enlarge and expand the new city of Cairo. In 1277 the Arab traveller Abd-ul-Latif visited them and still found the ruins of the city, of which he reports the following: "Its ruins still offer to the eye of the beholder a collection of wonderful works which confuse the mind (because of the greatness and splendour of their former existence) and which the most eloquent man would struggle in vain to describe".

15. Such a testimony the traveller gave her 600 years ago. And what is left of the city today? Behold, the Divine judgement has been so completely fulfilled that a century ago even the location where Memphis once lay, was a disputed point. With the exception of two remnants, all idols, images, temples, the city and everything it contained, have disappeared.

*

27.3 Prophecies about the land of Egypt

16. The prophecy about the land of Egypt deserves special recognition. In Ezekiel, chapter 29, the approaching conquest of Egypt by Nebuchadnezzar, the king of Babylon, is prophesied: “The Egyptians shall be led into captivity and the land shall be a desert for 40 years[95]. At the end of that time they shall return, but their greatness shall not be restored.”

17. The judgement of decay is announced in Jeremiah in the 46th chapter in verse 11 with the following words: "Go up to Gilead and get ointment, virgin, daughter of Egypt; but it is in vain that you medicate so much, you will not be healed.” In Ezekiel, chapter 29, verse 15 it says: "They shall no longer rise above the Gentiles, and I will make them low, that they shall not rule over the Gentiles.” Furthermore, Ezekiel chapter 30, verses 4 and 6, says, "Their foundations shall be pulled down... and the rise of his power must be brought down.”

18. Despite this prophecy, Egypt was still so powerful at the beginning of the seventh century of the Christian era that the Muslim armies, though inflated by victories, hesitated to attack it.

19. Only in the year 638 after Christ, i.e. more than 1200 years after the prophecy was made, Egypt fell under the Mohammedan land-devastators and did not recover again. The decline was slow but steady. They were not to be killed off and exterminated, but rather the great humiliation of Egypt is emphasized: *"They shall be a low kingdom there. It shall be the lowest of the kingdoms and shall not rise above the nations"*.

20. The last point in this prophecy is the decisive one, because it says in Ezekiel, chapter 30, verse 13, that although the kingdom continues, no indigenous[96] prince should rule over Egypt any longer. This prophecy is completely and literally fulfilled. In the year 525 before Christ, Egypt was conquered by the Persians under Cambyses and for the next 170 years, its history is only a tale of more or less successful rebellions until it was completely subjugated by Ochos in 350 before Christ. From that time until the present day, no indigenous prince has ruled the land. It has often changed its masters, but among them all there has been none of the sons of Egypt.

21. The people sighed under terrible pressure, sought deliverance from outside, but never from among their own children; for there were no longer - according to the words of the Bible - a prince from the land of Egypt. Behold, thus the history of the world pressed the seal of truth on the Divine word of the Bible.

22. On the basis of the Bible and history, we want to consider other prophecies about Egypt, which reveal the appearance and fate of the whole country. The hand of decay should also be placed on the rivers and canals. We read the highly significant prophecy in Ezekiel, chapter 30, verse 12: "I will make the rivers dry"; and in Isaiah, chapter 19, verse 6, it says: "The water will dry up from the sea, and the river will disappear and dry up. And the rivers will stink; the rivers (or canals) of Egypt will become low and dry.”

23. Homer calls the Nile *Oceanus*, and ancient and modern Egyptians have simply called it the *sea* or *the sea of the Nile*. The streams, rivers or canals that were supposed to dry up and stink, are the arms of the Nile that flowed through the delta and poured the water of the gigantic river into the Mediterranean Sea. The prophecy has placed the stamp of truth deep on the rivers and canals of Egypt. The river was famous for its seven arms. Herodotus noticed that two of these, the present Damietta and Rosetta arms, were originally artificial and therefore speaks of the five mouths. Now, as has been the case for a long time, there are no other navigable arms than these two, which Herodotus calls "man's work". Even these are only accessible for small ships. The five other estuaries of the river have long been silted up and their course can hardly be followed over the large alluvial plain and through the network of

channels and lakes that lie between the sea and this point. So the streams have become dry, and instead of flowing in their old bed, they have become stinking puddles and swamps, just as 2500 years ago, the Divine word of the Bible announced this to mankind in advance.

24. The monuments and tales of old writers show you a river in the Nile, on the banks of which irises and reeds grew, which was the dwelling place of many wild birds and which carried the fragrant lotus flowers on its waters. Now very few reeds or water plants can be seen in Egypt, the famous papyrus is almost completely extinct, and the lotus is almost unknown, except in swamps near the Mediterranean Sea. This too was prophesied by Isaiah: "The reeds and the grass will wither, and the grass will be scattered by the waters, and all the seed of the waters will wither and be destroyed" (Isaiah 19:7). Papyrus and lotus formed a part of the wealth of Egypt, the latter has been punished by the disappearance of this wealth and the prophecy has been proved as truth.

25. A similar prediction has been made for fisheries. There were so many fish that the poorer class of the inhabitants lived almost entirely on fish, and the kings earned great revenues from it. But it was written at Isaiah 19:8: "The fishermen will mourn, and all who cast a hook into the Nile, will mourn, and those who cast a net into the water, will be grieved." With the decline of Egypt, the fish ponds and their water pipes became neglected, and therefore the fishermen mourned and lamented and were grieved as they were deprived of their food and earnings.

26. Through the decay and impoverishment of Egypt, their trades also fell into disrepair and disappeared, and so it happened according to the words of the prophecy: "There will exist with shame those who work there in curled flax and those who weave there white cloth. And the pillars of the land (who are the pillars of society, the rich and the noble, by whose patronage the trades were promoted) will be broken, and all who work for wages will be grieved (for there will be nothing to be done). And Egypt will have no work to align head or tail, palm branch or reed (Isaiah 19:9,10,15 - according to the English translation).

27. The head and tail mentioned here are equivalent names of those who lead and those who follow, like the tall palm branch and the humble reed of high and low, of the aristocracy and the mass of the people. Egypt, whose trade was perfected and completed to the highest degree, is today what the prophecy said 2500 years ago in advance, because everything has happened exactly.

28. There is much more that the prophecies speak of besides this, but it would be too extensive to mention everything. It just proves that the prophecies are Divine words, because they came true: Egypt is now a land of ruins, it is an immense burial place of the art and splendour of the past, and its present houses are, so to speak, dwellings among the tombs. It cannot be said that a single ancient city has been preserved.

29. Regarding the character of his masters, it is written in a clear, emphatic word: "I will sell the land into the hands of evil people" (Ezekiel 30:12). Since God is not a merchant, 'selling to evil people' means 'handing over the land into the hands of an enemy without resistance'. More recent descriptors of Egypt call it the land of slavery and tyranny and speak of the arbitrary rule of the brutal rulers of Egypt. It was said of Ali Bey[97]: 'Like his predecessors, he regarded Egypt as his private property and the natives as cattle which he could dispose of as he pleased.'

30. The history of Egypt is thus a disgrace to the human race between the rulers as evil people and their subjects, who are treated like slaves.

31. It is also said in Ezekiel, chapter 30, verse 12: "I will lay waste the land and everything in it by the hand of strangers." And see, since the invasion of the Persians in 525 before Christ until today, there have been various strangers who devastated and treated the land with evil and

brought it to the present deep desolation. Everything is the work of foreign evil people, which was foretold in the prophecies.

32. Nowadays, in the era of mindless denial of God, people no longer recognize God's punishment, but only historical, political, natural and elementary events; Holy Scripture alone, this much maligned Bible - speaks through the irrefutable evidence: God alone is the truth, His words are holy and infallible; but men are liars, as Daniel, David and other prophets testify.

33. The Egyptians in primeval times had the same religion as the Adamites, or later the Original Christians, since they were immigrated Adamites; but the wealth, luxury, power and greatness made them brutal barbarians to the poor pagan captive strangers who had to build and erect their astonishing works of art and architecture as slaves. And they experienced the same fate as they once did with their slaves, until the present generation. God does not let the atrocities committed against His children, called "human beings", go unpunished, but sooner or later the punishment will take place. The Bible stands as a living witness that by fulfilling or not fulfilling the Divine commandment, people either receive God's protection, grace and favour, or experience terrible events that run like a red thread through the long Egyptian and Jewish history and bear witness to the truth.

34. But a time is coming when God will have mercy on His poor, oppressed people. He will send them a Saviour and Master to save them, as Isaiah chapter 19, verses 20-25 reports. For the Lord will be known to the Egyptians and the Egyptians will know the Lord at the same time. At that time, Israel will be joined to Egypt and Assyria as a third party, and there will be blessings within the land that Jehovah, the ruler of the world, will bless, by saying: “Blessed be My people of Egypt and My hands' work, Assyria[98] and My hereditary people Israel!” And who is this hereditary people of Israel? Every person who fulfills the commandments of God and the teachings of Jesus, is a member of this people.

*

27.4 Territorial and historical evidence about Babylon

35. From Egypt we turn to the Babylonian plain of Chaldea. The prophecies about Chaldea, that its cities would become desert - a dry, barren land - are fulfilled. The beautiful, fertile and rich land, where the grain carried two or three hundred times, is now a barren desert. Everything bears the seal of the literally fulfilled prophecies.

I. Babylon, the most beautiful city in the mentioned kingdoms, the glorious splendour of the Chaldeans, God promised to overthrow, as He did Sodom and Gomorrah (Isaiah 13:19).

II. Desert-animals will lie down there and their houses will be full of owls; and ostriches will dwell there, wild dogs will howl in their palaces, and jackals in the merry castles (Isaiah 13:21,22).

III. Babylon was to become a pile of stones (Isaiah 51:37).

IV. The hiding place of the tower of Nimrod are inhabited by lions etc..

36. Isaiah and Jeremiah prophesy of its desolate, barren and arid place. And just as it was predicted, it has arrived, slowly but surely, for lions have in fact been found residing there, as Urquhart reports.

27.5 Territorial and historical demonstrations in Idumea, about the country of the Philistines and Cretans

37. From Babylonia we turn to Palestine, where there is much evidence of the prophetic Word fulfilled. Yes, one can say that by chance one or two prophecies came true and therefore there is nothing extraordinary about it, only if one carefully examines the many and extensive prophecies and their fulfillment by the undeniable - therefore proven - history and considers the evidence in innumerable and colossal scope on the spot, then the assertion of coincidence and clever pre-calculation ceases, for if nowadays one considers oneself highly learned, but declares the peoples of prehistoric times to be stupid and barbaric, how can one then deny the greatest respect to a book that tells hundreds and thousands of years in advance facts that no human being could know and which have come true word for word, while one oneself, in spite of high scholarship, cannot say from one day to the next: Exactly that and nothing else will happen? How can one speak of a sound mind when the truth is denied in the face of proven and visible facts and the truth is twisted into lies!

38. Several prophets prophesied about the future of Idumea or Edom with the rock-city of Petra, which was named after the ancient Sanskrit language Sela (çalia, i.e. "rock") (2nd Kings 14:7), where the number of destroyed cities shows that the country was densely populated.

39. Philistine was wiped out and devastated together with the Philistines and Cretans, along with their great cities: Ekron, Ashdod, Ashkelon, Gath and Gaza, and many populous settlements; for Philistine was a land of great cities, famous for the wealth and splendour, wisdom and warlike valour of its army and fleet, noblemen and warriors, merchants and craftsmen.

*

27.6 Historical prophecies about some cities in the land of Israel, later fulfilled

40. Now we leave the sea coast of Palestine and go over to the land of Israel. The prophet Moses proclaimed more than 1500 years earlier the chastisement of Israel (Leviticus 26:27-34), if they would not follow - and since they did not follow, this has happened to them several times; but finally, when nothing could be done anymore, the Israelites would be driven out of their own land and scattered among the Gentiles, which happened partly in the years 70 after Christ - however, completely in the year 135.

41. Their cities were to be made desolate; and indeed, after 135 after Christ, Judea became a desert where wolves and hyenas wandered howling through the streets of the desolate cities.

42. Older descriptions of the most fertile and densely populated parts of the country state the following: "The ruins lie so close over hills and valleys that in some parts, three ancient cities came within two square miles [of each other] and that above all other countries of the world, this country is a land of ruins". "There is scarcely a hilltop [of Judea] among the many in sight, that is not covered by the remains of an ancient fortress or city."

43. In many parts of the country you can see nothing but bare rocks, bare mountains, bare abysses and karst-like fields. For the Promised Land, a land of prosperity where milk and honey flowed, has been transformed into a rough, stony land as a result of disobedience to God. Nowadays in many places, it bears the image of the stone country "Karst" between Carniola and Trieste.

*

Schumi comments:

According to the original language, the name Ka-nani meant, as Father Jesus explained, the "land of prosperity". If you now look at the land of Kanani in a panoramic showcase, it looks stony and sad compared to once, when the Garden of Paradise was located in its meadows by the Jordan. For not far from where the Jabok River flows into the Jordan River, the great disaster came upon Adam and his descendants. This is the revelation of the Father Jesus to Schumi.

Yes, even the Christian pilgrimages to the tomb of the Redeemer were already mentioned in the 5th book of Moses. (29:22) Strangers will come from distant lands, who will call attention to the visible judgement of God. The prophecy depended on the victory of Christianity, which after 1800 years under Constantine the Great, made Judea a holy land of the Christian faith.

*

Jesus continues:

44. The fate of Bethel, one of the oldest sanctuaries in the land of Judah, was prophesied by Amos (3:14; 5:5).

45. The terrible judgement on Samaria is read in the prophet Micah (1:5, 6).

46. About Capernaum, God spoke the judgement in Jesus personally (Matt 11:23): "You shall go down into hell!" And it disappeared so completely from the scene, that nowadays you don't even know where it once was.

47. The prophet Micah (3:9-12) brought 789 years in advance the terrible judgement about the destruction and annihilation of Jerusalem, with the following words: "Listen, you heads of the house of Jacob and you princes of the house of Israel, who build Zion with blood and Jerusalem with iniquity. Therefore Zion will be ploughed up like a field for your sake, and Jerusalem will become a heap of stones, and the mountain of the temple, a wild high place." The temple was a miracle of the world, but Jesus prophesied its destiny almost 40 years before, that not one stone of it would be left on top of the other. (Matt 24:1; Luke 19:41; Mark 13:1)

48. The present [1904 – Tr.] Saracen city of Jerusalem covers only a small, more outward area of the one million inhabitants of the former royal city of that name.

49. What happened to Jerusalem under Titus[100] in the year 70 after Christ is well known, and what was left of the city at that time, was swept away from the earth and destroyed in the Jewish revolution of 135.

*

Schumi concludes:

Under the Eastern Roman Emperor Julian the apostate, God confirmed His prophecy, as fulfilled in the year 363 through volcanic eruptions and did not allow Jerusalem to be rebuilt in its true old position. But according to multiple prophecies, (Isa 2:3,4; Zach 2:4,5) Jerusalem will resurrect in the future and, as the Father revealed this to the scribe and as can also be taken from the prophecy of Jeremiah (4:14; 27-40), will become a spiritual center of the true faith of Christ.

A holy reverence takes hold of man as he reads through the many prophecies which have become a terrible truth as they have gradually been literally fulfilled.

Therefore the Bible, apart from human political history, which betrays human weaknesses, is a holy book, because it glorifies Him who had it written. It is still a holy book despite errors in the translations, as well as the writers' own views and the distortions of the people who take advantage of them, as far as it contains prophecies and Divine teachings of love - and the historical explanations of the fulfilled prophecies of John Urquhart, are indeed the seal of God that this book is a book of Divine truth and that no other books have equal value apart from the new Christian Theosophical books, which are the dictated personal word of God Jesus Christ.

CHAPTER 28

SCHUMI'S COMMENT ON THE PRESENTATION OF THE SECOND PART

The present and literally fulfilled prophecies are irrefutable proof to us that the Bible is a holy book of Divine prophecies; that Moses was the greatest prophet of God because, as the Bible proves, he performed the greatest miracles through the Divine will and revelations about the more than 2600 years for the old times after him in hieroglyphic symbols - which are still not understood today in 1904 - and wrote down prophecies extending over 1500 and 1800 years into the far future, which only came true after Jesus' death in the Christian age.

The Christ-question, whether He was God or man, is irrefutably solved by the fulfilled prophecies.

Jehovah gave the prophecies through His prophets. As we have seen, they all came to pass literally, but this proves that under the name of Jehovah - God and Father of angels, spirits, humans and creatures of the world – prophesies was given, because His prophecies that have come to pass cannot be refuted by mere denial. But because we have truly recognized the God of the prophets under Jehovah, all other prophecies from Him also receive the seal of truth and full trust, since we find their fulfillment recorded in the Gospels and in Jewish and pagan writers.

Therefore, because every prophecy of the Bible is an inviolable Divine truth, no-one who can think logically and hears the truth of the fulfilled prophecies, would want to claim: yes, everything has been historically proven to be true, but the story of Jesus Christ is not true! He was a human being like us. Oh boundless darkness of wisdom! If everything else is true and forms an irrefutable truth, what reasons could there be that prove the contrary? Why should the very greatest prophecies of the Bible, which went through all the great prophets of the old covenant from the days of Adam, not be true? Why should God and His prophets suddenly become nothing but liars through the very greatest prophecies of the Bible, without being able to prove this denial of truth? I ask: have not all the prophecies about Christ been fulfilled, written thousands and hundreds of years in advance? Does not the Greek Septuagint[101] - when 280 years before Christ all prophecies were translated from Hebrew into Greek - prove that no deception or historical fraud can be spoken of?

From the further following arguments it is very clearly proved that Christ was God Himself in human form, but could only come into the world in such a way that men had no fear of Him and His teaching, which He presented only through the self-risen insight that it is Divine and therefore includes eternal life in itself and should be accepted, for which also His neighbourly love speaks through the miraculous healings of the sick, which presented Him as an unusual human being, so he could be the Messiah after all. For if the Jews had certainly known that their Almighty God Jehovah lives in the person of Christ, they would have been oppressed in their personal freedom through fear and reverence, and would have done everything that Christ said. But because humans come from God and the Spirit of God lives in them, therefore no compulsion on their free will may be exercised in the confession of faith. God has plants and animals under His command, but to His children He gives free self-regulation. They can become devils through evil virtues and qualities, but children of God and overjoyed spirits of heaven by living according to the commandments and teachings of God.

Because the Old Testament God, Jehovah Zebaoth, actually entered the flesh under the name of Christ, therefore only this teaching given by Jehovah in the Old Testament and derived from Jehovah in the person of Jesus Christ, to which the prophecies below testify, is the true teaching of God which was given to mankind to live and act according to; but all other religions are mixed with human

statutes of philosophical-religious colouring, which were created precisely because of the human statutes, which are intertwined in it and which cloud and distort the truth and never ever lead directly to God; because there can never be more than one truth and this is from God, according to the fulfilled prophecies of the Bible. That is why Christ said: I am the Way through My teaching of love and wisdom, by which I set an example for you. I am the Truth, because I am the Eternal - and in fulfillment of My words, a faithful God - and I am Life, because [I am] the Spirit of the world-surrounding air, without which no-one can live, because in it, the love of life, the wisdom of education and the power of perfection - or the Holy Trinity of God: Father, Son and Holy Spirit - is contained alive and fully.

Christ said: No-one comes to see God if not through Me, that is: only if he recognizes Me as a personal God, because the Father - as the love in God - dwells in Me, and I, His Wisdom, am in him through My Love. I and the Father are therefore One, because he who sees Me, sees the Father - since I am the personal bearer of Divine Love, which is spiritually called God the Father. After these extensive clarifications and pre-foundations of the Divine truth of the facts, we come to the examination of the prophetic-historical source references, according to which we recognize Christ as God the Father in His Holy Trinity in the promised Messiah.

PART 2

ELOHIM-JEHOVA IS JESUS CHRIST

CHAPTER 29

Proof that Jesus was the Promised Messiah or Christ; The first Promise of the Redeemer in Messiah

1. After Adam sinned, Jehovah promised a Savior, Redeemer, or Rescuer who, according to later prophecies, turned out to be the incarnation of God in Messiah or Christ. The basic meaning of this promise is as follows:

I. Genesis 3:15 - I will put enmity between you, you serpent (or "selfishness") and the woman (called "charity") and between your seed and her seed. And the seed (of neighbourly love) will crush your head (of your selfishness) and you (selfishness) will sting it (the seed of neighbourly love as Savior in Christ) in (the loveless who are) the heel (of mankind).

II. Already in the year 919 after the creation of Adam, I, Jesus as Jehovah - because at that time I stayed with the Adamites under the mountain Lebanon in Phoenicia for 1 ½ months - prophesied to the then future mother[102] of Noah that I Myself would step into the flesh as Savior in Messiah through a descendant from her blood.[103] At that time Mary also lived for the first time in the world[104] under the name of "Pura", (The doctrine of karma and reincarnation, or that the deceased repeatedly step into the flesh on earth, is a truly Original Christian doctrine, which is explained in the book: *"Christian Theosophy"*;) and then I said directly that exactly she will be the one who will carry Me, the Reason of all life, one day under her heart. *(*[*Household of God*] Ch 1, chapters 185 and 477.)

III. In 1657, Noah (ChtS 1 [*Household of God*], chapter 42) - in the year 2055 after Adam - Abraham, (Gen 1:18) then his descendants Isaac (Gen 26:4) and Jacob, (Gen 28:1-14) received the promise that from their seed, from the people of Israel, the Messiah will come.

IV. In 1866 before Christ, the arch-father Jacob prophesied in Egypt that the Messiah would come from the tribe of Judah (Gen 49:10) and finally in 1028 before Christ, I - Jehovah - prophesied through the prophet Nathan (2 Samuel 7:12-16) that I would come from the house and seed of King David.

V. About My fleshly descent in Jesus, I prophesied through the prophet Isaiah 11:1-2: "A sprig will sprout from the stem of Jesse (or David) and a branch from its root will bear fruit, on which the Spirit of Jehovah will rest, the Spirit of wisdom and insight, the Spirit of counsel and strength (compare Isa 9:5 with 1 Cor 1:24) the Spirit of knowledge and fruit of the Lord. And when 4120 years[105] had passed after the first promise once made to Adam, I, Jesus, the great Prince of Peace in heaven and earth (Isa 9:5), was born in a mountain cave near David's hometown Bethlehem, from a 15 year old chaste virgin named Mary.

VI. In 4 Moses 24:17, the prophet Balaam gives a prophecy about the star of the wise at My birth: "I see Him (the Messiah), but not now; I see Him, but not from near. A star will rise from Jacob and a (spiritual) sceptre will arise from Israel and destroy the Moabites (i.e. those who destroy the truth) and destroy the children of the tumult (i.e. of the world).

VII. As a result of this prophecy, the three wise men from the east came to Jerusalem and asked, "Where is the newborn king of the Jews? For we have seen His star in the east

and have come to worship Him. (Matt 2:1,2)

*

29.1 Prophecies about the Messiah by Jacob and Daniel

2. In 1866 before Christ, the arch-father Jacob prophesied in Egypt that the Messiah would come when the Jews would no longer have their own kings (Gen. 49:10)[106]. 543 years before Christ, the prophet Daniel prophesied that Messiah would be anointed after 490 years from the year before Christ 458 at Passover, which corresponds to the year 33 after Christ at Passover (Psalm 2:6) or His reign of the new covenant (Hebr 9:15) and that then the material sacrifices and food offerings of the Jews will be abolished through the sacrifice of the highest sacrifice for the original sin of the world (Dan 9:24-27).

*

29.2 Prophecies about the Messiah's forerunner

3. In 724 before Christ, Isaiah prophesied about the voice of a preacher in the desert that would prepare the way for Jehovah (Is. 40:3-40). And 440 years before Christ, Malachi (3:1) prophesied that the angel Elijah should appear as a herald and prepare the way for the Messiah. This preacher in the desert (John 1; Matthew 11:13; -17:1-3) as a harbinger of Jehovah, was John the Baptist in the wilderness of Betabara at the Jordan River.

*

29.3 Prophecies about the Circumstances about the Birth of the Messiah

4. 726 years before Christ, Isaiah (7:14) prophesies that the Messiah will be born of a virgin.

5. In 719 before Christ, Bethlehem is designated by the prophet Micah (5:1) as the birthplace of the Messiah.

6. And 602 years before Christ, the prophet Jeremiah (31:15) reports about the infanticide committed by Herod in Bethlehem because of the birth of the Messiah.

*

29.4 Prophecies about the Messiah Who would be a great Prophet

7. 1458 years before Christ. I, Jehovah, prophesied through Moses that I would raise up a great prophet, and that great prophet was I, Jehovah in Jesus Myself (Deut 18:15-18).

*

29.5 Prophecies spoken by Jesus

8. I prophesied to the Samaritan woman about her former way of life (John 4:18-19)

I. To Nathaniel the nature of his character (John 1:47-49)

II. To Peter of the penny (Matt 17:27) in the mouth of the fish

III. About the future fate of Chorazin, Bethsaida and Capernaum (Matt 11:21,24);

IV. I further prophesied that the kingdom of God will be taken from the Jews and handed over to the Gentiles (Matt 21:42-44)

V. About the future destruction of Jerusalem, about the persecution of Christians, the fate of the Jews, the return of Christ, and that the generation of the Jews will not pass away until everything prophesied has been fulfilled (Luke 21:5; Matthew chapters 23 and 24)

VI. About My imminent suffering and resurrection from death (Matthew 17:9-13; -12:40; -26:21; Mark 8:31; Luke 18:32; John 3:14; 8:28; 12:32-33).

VII. About the donkey and its filly (Matthew 21:2; E.J.Ch. 10, II. Kap. 66.)

VIII. About My disciples, (Matthew 26:21-25; -27:3-10; John 13:11; Matthew 26:31,33-35,69-75)

IX. and about Jerusalem, etc. (E.J.Ch. X II. 73, 185; Dan 9, 26-27; Luke 21:5-24; Matt ch 23 and 24)

29.6 Confirmation that Jesus was that great Prophet foretold by Moses

9. According to Moses, I - Jesus - would become the Redeemer of the world from original sin; (Gen 3:15; Hebr 9:15; Rom 3:25)

I. According to David, I would be a speaker in parables (Psalm 78:1,2)

II. According to Isaiah, I would come to them in Zion and make a new covenant with the people of Israel (Isa 59:20-21)

III. Jeremiah reports that I will be the founder of a new covenant (Jer 31:31,33)

IV. Isaiah reports that I become a teacher of the Divine gospel (Isa 61:1)

V. And that My children are taught by Me Myself (Isa 54:13; John 6:45), as it is actually the case in *Christian Theosophy*. I was a miraculous Saviour, as all 4 evangelists report.

*

VI. Isaiah 52:6 - I, the LORD prophesied: "At that time My people shall know My name, for it is I (the LORD) who say (in Jesus): Here am I (as the Messiah who was announced in advance).

VII. Isaiah 25:9 - At that time they will say: Behold! This is our God, upon whom we wait and He helps us; this is Jehovah, upon whom we wait, let us rejoice and be glad in His salvation.

*

29.7 The Transfiguration on Mount Tabor

10. Through Isaiah 42:1 - I, Jehovah prophesied these as follows: “Behold! This is My servant whom I sent, this is My beloved son in whom I am well pleased. I have given Him My Spirit, He will bring justice among the heathen. Listen to Him!" Isaiah did not understand My words well, and therefore the verse was not well written. The truth can bee seen in the facts: Matt 12:18; - 17:5; 2 Peter 1:17; Mark 9:6; Luke 9:35.

11. 1 Tim 3:16: "The mystery of godliness is acknowledged to be great; revealed in the flesh, justified in the Spirit, seen by angels, preached to the Gentiles, believed by the world, received into glory."

CHAPTER 30

Proof that Jesus Christ was the Son of God

1. Through King David I said in 1043 before Christ (Psalm 7) in the second Psalm: You are My son, I have begotten you today." Because King David had already been sitting on the throne since the year 1055 before Christ, and did not beget [a child] before January 24, 1043; and because I, Jehovah, was not his earthly father either, therefore not David, but I, Jehovah Myself, according to My Wisdom (Isaiah 9:5; 1 Cor 1:24, 30; Col 2:3) could be meant as the Son of God under this statement.

2. I, Jehovah, spoke of the same son in 1028 before Christ through the prophet Nathan to David: "When therefore your lifetime is over and you lie with your fathers (namely dead, rotten and decayed in the flesh), I will raise up your seed after you (namely more than a thousand years later), and to this offspring from your body, I will confirm His (spiritual) kingdom forever. I will be His Father, and He shall be My Son (Sam 7:12-14), whom all gods (or angels), spirits and men shall worship." (Ps 97:7)

3. The prophet Hosea brought the news of the return of the same son (Jesus from Ostracine in Egypt) 763 years before Christ with the following words: "From Egypt I have called My Son (Hosea 11:1). At the announcement to Mary, the angel Gabriel appeared and said to her: "The Holy Spirit will come upon you and the power of the Most High will overshadow you, therefore the Holy One who is born of you will be called the Son of God" (Luke 1:35).

4. When the Pharisees had pushed the healed blind man out of the temple, I approached him and asked him, "Do you believe in the Son of God?" Then the healed one asked Me: Lord, who is it that I should believe in Him? And I answered him, "You have seen Him who now speaks to you, it is He." (John 9:35-37)

5. According to John's record, I publicly confessed to the Jews that I was the Son of God! (John 10:36)

6. At the Transfiguration on Mount Tabor, a bright cloud surrounded the disciples, and from it a voice spoke: this is My beloved Son in whom I am well pleased, listen to Him (Matt 17:5; Mark 9:6; Luke 9:35)

7. The message in Matthew, Mark and Luke that this voice could also be heard at the baptism in the Jordan is based on a historical error, namely: First it was Luke who heard this among the people and wrote it down, then came the pseudo-Matthew from Sidon, the Rabbas, who was said the same thing. In Mark, however, it was entered by a copyist idiosyncratically from the folk tale, because Mark did not bring this news and the original gospel of Mark's gospel, was never in the hands of the Roman church. John correctly described the baptism at the Jordan.

8. In Psalm 89:27-28, I prophesied as Jehovah of My wisdom in Christ: He will call Me, "You are My Father, My God, and a refuge who helps Me. And I will make Him the first son, the most high among the kings on earth."

9. At the Last Supper, I said: "Whatever you ask the Father in My name, I will give it to you, that the Father may be glorified through the Son". (John 14:13)

10. After Caiaphas' imploring question of whether I am really "the Son of God", I affirmed that I am indeed that. (Luke 22:69-70; Matt 24:63-64)

11. And therefore the Pharisees mocked Me on the cross and said, "Come down, Son of God, since I have also on many other occasions openly confessed that I am the Son of God" (*Book of Wisdom* 7:24-29).

*

30.1 Prove that the Son of God means the same as the Wisdom of God or the Word of God

12. The evidence of this is as follows:

I. The apostle Peter was in the year 48 with Joseph of Arimathea, where he wrote the Epistle to the Hebrews, in which he says right at the beginning: that God created the worlds through His Son Jesus, which is decidedly against Moses, if one takes a material view of Moses' creation. But the designation 'Son of God' is only the spiritual equivalent of the material word "wisdom of God". When one now knows and understands this, then nobody will object that God created the world through the Wisdom of His Love. The apostle Paul (Gal 1:11,12) gives you the proof that this interpretation of the word is correct in the first epistle to the Corinthians (1:24), in which he describes Christ as the Wisdom and Power of God. So it was Wisdom that conceived the forms, colours, assimilations, species and genera, and the Power, as the omnipotence of God, which is otherwise called the Holy Spirit, put these creations into visible existence.

II. Also Paul says in the letter to the Colossians (1:13-17) that all things were created through Christ. Thus the worlds was created in the person of Christ, which is God the Father, as the begetting Love in God - hence the Divine Wisdom and Omnipotence must have been the eternal content of the person of Christ. If one knows that I, Jesus, am the Divine Wisdom, then one also understands My words that I spoke at the last supper:

III. John 16:14,15 - The Father will glorify Me; for He will take it from Mine and proclaim it to you (what happened at Pentecost): For all that the Father has is Mine, therefore I said: He will take it from Mine and proclaim it to you (namely from the Father of His Wisdom, or Theosophy).

IV. Paul wrote to the Romans (1:19-20): "What is known of God is manifest (or evident) to man, for God has put it before their senses (and eyes), He has made it visible to them; [20] because the invisible (because it is spiritual), namely His eternal power and Deity, is, since the creation of the (material) world through contemplation of His works (which Divine Love conceived through His Wisdom and made visible through its Omnipotence), so (evident and) recognizable that men cannot be excused (if they do not want to acknowledge this).

V. Likewise Isaiah 9:5 says: that the newborn child Jesus is the Counsel of the eternal God the Father and therefore the Wisdom of God, since only the Wisdom of God as the Counsel of the eternal God the Father must have been in the creation, the very basis of the reason, when there was nothing but God.

VI. The evangelist John calls the Son of God "the Word", because he says: "In the foundation of the ground was the Word, and the Word was with God and God was the Word and the Word became flesh - Jesus - and dwelt among us and we saw His Divine glory at Mount Tabor. (John 1:1,3,14) But the word of God is the same as the teaching of God or the Divine Wisdom, called *Theosophy* in Greek, therefore the spiritual word "Son of God" means the same as the Divine Wisdom or the Word of God.

VII. Furthermore John says in the first epistle: "The witnesses are three in heaven: 'The Father, the Word and the Holy Spirit'." (1 John 5:7) And I, Jesus, told the apostles: "Baptize them in the name of the Father, the Son and the Holy Spirit!" (Matt 28:19). Thus, the 'Word of God' means the same as the 'Wisdom of God', which is spiritually called the 'Son of God'. This word alone was rejected by the majority of the Jews, just as God said in advance through the prophet Isaiah (5:24) in the year 743: For they despise the law of Jehovah Zebaoth and blaspheme the speech (or word) of the Holy One of Israel.

13. The following Bible verses speak about the holiness of Wisdom:

I. The Wisdom of God is the breath of Divine power and a pure ray of the glory of the Almighty, therefore nothing impure (*sinful*) can come to it. For He is an emanation of Eternal Light and an immaculate mirror of Divine power and an image of His goodness. He goes out with more glory than the sun and all the stars. (*Book of Wisdom* 7:24-29)

II. Isaiah 9:8 foretells the following: The Lord has sent a (*promised*) word (according to the prophecy made (Gen 49:10) in Jacob, and it has fallen (*i.e. been proclaimed*) in Israel.

III. Isaiah 10:17 - And the light of Israel (John 8:12) (namely the Wisdom of God Jesus - 1 Cor 1:24) will be a fire (*i.e. the Love of God*), and its holy One (i.e. God - Rev 15:4) will be a flame (i.e. God's Wisdom), and it will light (*i.e. publicly reveal*) its thorns (*i.e. religious abuses*) and hedges (*i.e. the priesthood from which the thorns grow*) and consume (*i.e. reveal your religious abuses to the world) in one day, (i.e. in due course*)

14. About the Word of God (*or Logos*) Jesus Christ made flesh - that He is the Wisdom of God, the eighth chapter of Solomon's Proverbs tells you the following:

I. [7] My tongue (*or mouth*) speaks the truth and My lips hate wickedness

II. [12] I, the Wisdom (*of God*) possess wisdom and know exactly how to give good advice.

III. [14] Mine is both counsel and action; I have knowledge and power (1 Cor 1:24); [22] Jehovah (or God the Father) had Me in the beginning of His ways and works; before He created anything, I was there. [23] I am appointed from eternity, from the beginning of time, before the origin of the earth. [24] no depths nor springs of water were yet, as I was already born (i.e. in terms of content) in the love of God. [25] Before mountains and hills were founded, I was born (*out of the Love of God*) (*being in it, in content, from eternity*).

IV. [27] When He prepared the heavens and grasped the deep with His purpose, I was already there. [28] When He stretched the cloudy sky above and made the springs of the deep flow. [29] When He appointed the shores of the sea so that the waters would not overflow its mouths; and when He laid the foundation of the earth; [30] I was the most intimate with Him, the Master Craftsman, having My pleasures day after day and playing (*i.e. devising the forms, species, assimilations and colours*) before Him all the time; [31] and playing (*with the flashes of My Wisdom Depth*) on His earth; and My pleasures are with the children of men. [32] Obey Me now, My children! Blessed are those who walk My ways! [33] Listen to instruction, and be wise, and do not refuse them. [34] People who obey Me and watch at My door (*i.e. Love-commandments*) daily and guard the posts of My door (*i.e. watch over his virtues in the Divine Love-commandments*). [35] For he who finds Me, finds (*eternal*) life and receives favor from Jehovah. [36] Who but sins against Me, he falls to the death of the spiritual Life. But all who hate Me, love death (*of their soul*).

V. Enlightenment about the "Only-begotten Son" Jesus follows in chapter XXII.

*

30.2 Prove that Jesus Christ was God's Wisdom according to His Soul

15. These proofs are based on the following teaching revealed to you by Myself, Jesus: In Me, Jesus, is to be understood God's Wisdom, the soul, which represents the Wisdom in every man; for it is it through which the Spirit of your heavenly Father 'Divinely' speaks; therefore, the soul of Jesus was the personified Wisdom of God, which manifested itself through the teaching of Love, which I, Jesus, taught for three years. That is why John called Me, Jesus, the Word of God, because I, Jesus, was represented by My soul and My teaching as Wisdom from God.

16. Since I, Jesus, as the Counsel of the eternal Father-God, am already mentioned as the newborn child (Isa 9:5), but the Counsel of God cannot be anyone else but the Divine Wisdom, since God never needed counsel (Rom 11:33-36), so My soul was the Counsel or the Wisdom of the Father-God since eternity, because My flesh-body was only the animated matter through My soul in Jesus.

17. I spoke about My spiritual-Divine Being and made Myself known in the following way: "The Father is in Me and I, His Son, am in Him." (John 10:38; -14:10,11,20; -17:21,23) Since 'Father' means the Spirit of Love in God (John 4:8,16), but the body of Jesus represented the Temple of God (John 2:19-22), My soul have meant "the Wisdom of God".

18. Since God the Father created the world through the Son (Hebrews 1:2; Colossians 1:16) and the Son is called the Wisdom of God (1 Cor 1:24), so the soul of the Son will be the Wisdom of God. For the Wisdom of God is the Word of God, and through it, heaven and all things were made (Ps 33:6).

19. Since I, Jesus, am called the Word of God (John 1:1-3,14; 1 John 5:7), but the Word of God presents the Divine Wisdom, the soul in Me, Jesus, was the Wisdom of God, since it was neither the Father-God, nor My material-visible body. (John 1:1-3,14; - 1 John 5:7). As My teaching therefore was Divine Wisdom (which is called Theosophy in Greek), but this was represented by My spiritual Person in the material body, so My indeed was My soul the Wisdom of God, but not God the Father, who is the Love in God (John 4:8,16) and also not My body, which I only called the temple of God (John 2:19-22), because I, Jesus as God the Father and Son of God - that is the Love and Wisdom of God, dwelled in it. (John 14:10-11). Because I, the Wisdom and the Power or Omnipotence of God (1 Cor 1:24) said openly that the Father dwells in Me and not outside of Me (John 14:10-11)

20. At the Last Supper, I said: "Father, all that is Mine is Yours, and what is Yours is Mine" (1 John 17:10). To understand this verse, one must know that in Me the name 'God the Father' represented the Love in My Heart and the 'Son of Love', which is the Wisdom in God, was in the head of My soul. My soul alone, as God's Wisdom, had at the last supper already completely passed over into the love for My children, whom I wanted to redeem - therefore did the Love of the Father become one with the Son's Wisdom and represented the Divine Truth and Holiness. But Wisdom, after all, represented the soul of Jesus because the wisdom of the mind is the regent of all senses and intelligences in the body of the soul - while Love, which is called 'Father' in spiritual correspondence, represents the Spirit of the Love of God in the heart of My soul.

21. That I, Jesus, was the personified Wisdom of God, which is otherwise called the Word or

Teaching of God, you can see from My own words, which I spoke to the Jews, as follows: According to the sixth chapter of the Evangelist John from the 32nd verse on, I said to the Jews:

[32] "It was not Moses who gave you the (*true*) bread from heaven when he left Egypt for Canaan, but My Father (*i.e. My love for you*) gives you the true (*i.e. spiritual*) bread from heaven.
[33] For this is the bread of God, which comes from heaven and gives (*spiritual*) life to the world.
[35] I (*Jesus*), am (*namely*) the (*spiritual*) bread of life (*who gives you the pure teaching about Me*); he who comes to Me (*as to his God*) will not hunger (*spiritually and not materially*); and he who believes in Me (*Jesus as God*) will never thirst (*spiritually*).
[47] Verily, verily, I say to you: whoever believes in Me (*that I am the Son of God, i.e., the Wisdom of God, which I present and teach you*), has eternal life.
[48] I (*as God's Son or God's Wisdom*) am the bread of (*spiritual*) life.
[49] Your fathers ate manna in the desert, yet they died.
[50] This alone is the bread that comes down from heaven (*as the spiritual doctrine of God*), so that no-one will die (*spiritually, i.e. in sin*) who eats it (*i.e. who follows the teachings of Jesus handed down by the apostles*).
[51] I (*as the personified word of God*) am the living bread that comes from heaven; whoever eats of this bread (*i.e., whoever follows this teaching and lives by it*) will (*spiritually*) live forever. And this (*spiritual)* bread that I will give (*or expressed in other spiritually corresponding words*) is My flesh for the (*spiritual*) life of the world (*to be nourished*).
[53] Verily, verily, I say unto you: If you do not eat (*i.e. accept*) the (*spiritual*) flesh (*or the teaching of God*) of the Son of Man (*i.e. the Deity entered into the flesh*) and do not drink His (*spiritual*) blood (*which means in spiritual language: 1. the love of God for everything; 2. the love of man for God and for all men without exception as brothers and sisters; 3. the love for all creation*), you have no (*spiritual-eternal*) life in you.
[54] Whoever eats My flesh (*i.e. accepts My teaching from the heavens and acts accordingly*) and drinks My blood (*i.e. awakens and revives My spiritual love in him*) has eternal life and I will awaken him on the last day (*of his earthly life to heavenly spiritual eternal life*).
[55] For My flesh (*or spiritual teaching*) is the right (*Divine*) food (*or spiritual ambrosia*[107]) and My blood (*or Love*) is the right (*Divine*) drink (*or spiritual nectar*)
[56] He who eats My flesh, he who drinks My blood, remains in Me and I in him.
[57] Just as the living Father (*i.e. My living Love*) has sent Me and I live through the Father (*or through this Love*), so also he who eats Me (*i.e. accepts Me with full faith and full love*) will live through Me (*his God and Father eternally*).
[58] This is the bread which came down from heaven; not as your fathers ate manna and died. The one who eats this bread, (*i.e., the one who receives Me through My teaching revealed to you and enters into Me in fullest love*), will live eternally.

22. These passages from the Gospel of John show you in spiritual illumination that the teaching that I, Jesus, gave how My spiritual flesh was meant to be eaten. But this flesh is nothing other than the Word of God, of which John says in the first chapter of his gospel that it has become flesh in the person of Christ. From this it is clear that by "My flesh" I did not mean My material bodily flesh, but the teaching from the light of Divine Wisdom, which is exactly the bread from heaven which I brought as spiritual food for My children, because My soul is formed from the light of Divine Love, which is also My words: "I am the light of the world". (1 John 8:12) The "light of the world" in Christ can therefore never be anything other than the teaching of the Love of God, born through the Wisdom of God, as the guide to the Father.

*

30.3 Evidence that Jesus Christ is the Holy Spirit of God

23. We now ask: What is the Holy Spirit in God? The answer is: The Holy Spirit is the inner power in God. He is the will of God putting into action all that Love and Wisdom have devised.

24. But the willpower of God lies in magnetism and electricity, which are as one with the etheric air as orange-coloured water is filled with the yellow and red colour and is one with it. Love is magnetism, electricity is Wisdom. When one now considers that through these two the whole world is set in motion and maintained, then it becomes clear that the Holy Spirit is the representative of the Godhead Himself; because what good would it do for Love and Wisdom in God if His thoughts and decisions could not be put into work and action! It would be like the wishes of an incurable sick person - to get well.

25. The Holy Spirit, as the visible instigator of Divine decisions, is therefore the supreme power in God, and there is nothing that Love and Wisdom would like to conceive in God that cannot be put into work by the Holy Spirit, for in this - as can be seen from the whole context - the whole Godhead is included. The Holy Spirit is therefore in name the Deity Himself, and this I, Christ, as Paul reports in the first epistle to the Corinthians chapter 1, verse 24.

26. The Holy Spirit proceeds from Father (John 14:16,26; 15:26) and Son, (John 14:18; -16:13,15) therefore out of the Love and Wisdom in God.

27. I, Jesus, called the Comforter or Advocate[108], promised My disciples for Pentecost the Holy Spirit of Truth. (John 14:17; -16:13) Since I, Christ, Am the Divine Truth Myself, (John 14:16) as I called Myself at the Last Supper - therefore I, Jesus, Am the Holy Spirit of Truth Myself.

28. On Ascension Day, which is May 7th, I called this Holy Spirit "the power from on high". (Luke 24:49) So Luke also (Luke 1:35) calls the Holy Spirit, the power of the Most High. According to the clarifications published in the book The Holy Trinity and supported by the news from the New Testament, the graces and gifts of the Holy Spirit manifested, which the apostles received at Pentecost - that is on May 17th - the gifts of the Spirit: love, wisdom and power of God.

29. That I, Jesus, (according to My soul) was the Divine power (Luke 24:49) or the Holy Spirit (Acts 2:1-4), is especially enlightened by the fact that when I appeared to the apostles in the evening after My resurrection, I Myself breathed on them My own power and said: "Receive the Holy Spirit". (John 20:22) This breathing was done to strengthen the disciples who were afraid of the Pharisees and to help them interpret the Scriptures correctly. (Revelation of Jesus).

30. That the Holy Spirit is not an independent being but - as I said - only the effect of Love and Wisdom in God, is also proven by the passage in John where it says that the Spirit of Truth will not speak out of Himself, but that He will speak what He has heard. (John 16:13) Also the name "Spirit of Truth" proves the same, because the Truth in God, - the united thoughts of Love and Wisdom is in God, which then, through your willpower - which is precisely the Holy Spirit - effectively puts your thoughts into existence.

31. My words of promise to the apostles are important, which are: "I will send the Holy Spirit (John 17:7), for I will not abandon you to your fate as orphans, but I will come to you (John 14:18). This enlightenment gives you the proof that I as Christ Myself, was God of the universe. This is why I said at the last supper: "If you have known Me, you would know My Father also: and from henceforth you know Him, and have seen Him." (John 14:7).

CHAPTER 31

Melchizedek, king of Salem

1. In the history of Abraham you notice that in Salem there resided a spiritual king named Malchizedek, who was a high priest of God. But the name Malch-i-sedek means "king of justice." This name now points to Me, Jesus Christ - because in the Old Testament, God ruled the world through righteousness, which is the Wisdom of God, called the Son of God in spiritual language; and exactly this Son of God, Jesus Christ, is described in the Holy Scriptures as a Prince and King of peace (Malik skr. "king"; - Salem means "peace".) from eternity (Isaiah 9:5,6; Micah 5:1)

2. Peter calls Me Jesus Christ, the Son of God, a High Priest before God, Who penetrated the heavens (Hebr 4:14), and continues to say: But Christ did not settle for the dignity of becoming high priest Himself, but He (made Himself High Priest) who said to Him: "You are My Son, I have begotten You today (namely from eternity (Ps 2:7) Now Peter quotes the following passage from Psalm 110:

3. “When God referred to the high sacrifice of Jesus on the cross at Golgotha, He said through King David: 'Jehovah has sworn (i.e. swore firmly), He does not regret it: You (Jesus Christ) are a priest forever, according to the way of Malchisedek'.” (Psalm 110:4; Hebrews 5:5-6-10)

4. But this Malchizedek is without father, without mother, without generation register and has neither a beginning of days nor an end of life (Micah 5:1) but is similar (identical) to the Son of God and therefore remains a priest forever. (Hebr 7:1-3) That Peter knew that Christ and Malchisedek were one and the same person is proved to you by the following message. According to the reports of the Original Gospel [Gospel of John through Lorber - Tr] (ChtS 12, ch. 66) I, Jesus, told My listeners that the first men had constant contact with Me and that Malchizedek was none other than I Myself, the high priest of God and dwelt as a just king of kings in Salim, where I have resided since the time of Noah (the end of the flood was in 1657 after Adam.) until the death of Moses (2700 years after Adam or 1451 before Christ when Moses died), which was 1043 years. According to this enlightenment about the person of Malchizedek, the king of Salim, we come to the report of Moses about the victory of Abraham.

5. In 2053 after Adam, in the month of October, Abraham defeated the king of Elam, Kedon Laomor, who invaded the land of Canaan with his allied kings, and freed Lot, his brother's son, and all the captives from the cities of Sodoma and Gomorrah. Then when Abraham returned to the king's valley as victor, Malchizedek king of Salem came and brought bread and wine to strengthen the team.[109]

6. Then Malchizedek, being a priest of the supreme God, blessed Abram, saying: "Blessed be Abram, from God the Highest, the Lord of heaven and earth. And blessed be God the Highest, Who delivered your enemies into your hand.”Abraham knew that Malchizedek, the king of Salim, was I, Jesus, Jehovah Myself, but no-one but Abraham could suspect it. Therefore Abraham, the glorious victor over the allied kings of Sinear, Elasar, Elam and the Gentiles, bowed down to the ground before Me, Malchizedek - and freely gave Me a tenth of everything (1 Moses, 14th chapter; - Chs. 9,169, 11-13). I, Jesus, am exactly that Malchizedek of whom John says in Revelation 1:18, that He said to him: "I am the first and the last and the living. I was dead (but after three days I arose); and behold, I am alive forever and ever and have the keys of death and hell.”

7. Salim, the seat of Malchizedek, was the city later called Jerusalem. The following prophecy[110] tells you about this: The little child Jesus prophesies to the Roman governor of Syria, Quirinius[111], about the destruction of Jerusalem under Titus in the year 70, by saying: "[16] The fig tree (i.e., the people's lineage) of the children (of Israel) which I planted in Salem already in the time of Abraham, a city which I, like Melchizedek, built with My own, I will destroy it, for it bears nothing but leaves. [17] Verily Verily, I have always been hungry; many a time have I caused the tree in Salem to be manured and yet it brought Me no fruit. [18] Therefore, before a century passes, the city, which My strength has built for My children, must also fall through you foreigners. The son of one of the successors after Augustus in the empire shall draw his sword against Salem.

8. From this prophecy of the child Jesus, it is clear that Salem became the later Jerusalem. This also emerges from Psalm 76:3. Only in more recent times, scientists has begun to question whether Jerusalem is older than from the time of David (David reigned 1055-1015 before Christ). This doubt has been dispelled by findings in Assyria, as the following news item proves.

> "The origin of the name Jerusalem" says Prof. Sayce, is now clear. It is not an invention from the time of David, as it was thought; on the contrary, it goes back to the period of the Babylonian traffic with Canaan. For it is written in the cuneiform documents of Ur-Salim, that is, the "City of Salim", of the God of Peace. From one of the lexical tables in the library of Nineveh, we have long since seen that the Canaanite word *uru* means "city", (Urquhart, *The more recent discoveries and the Bible* 1, 328) which in 1451 before Christ was called ancient Hebrew *ieru* (according to God's revelation), hence Jeru-Salim, the city of Salem or "of peace".

9. Urquhart said in *The more recent discoveries and the Bible 1*, 327:

> "The discovery of the correspondence of the Egyptian kings Amenophis III (the 1492-1476 before Christ - according to Father Jesus) and Amenophis IV, (who ruled 1476-1452 B.C.) brought the Palestine of Abraham back from the grave. Under the Egyptian - King Amenophis IV - (in the years 1476-1463 written letters, which are now in the museums in Berlin and elsewhere, is a number from the then King at Jerusalem. Like Malchizedek (since He was Malchizedek Himself), He is a priest-king; and His communications shed unexpected light on what is said of His predecessor (as Urquhart assumes) in the Letters to the Hebrews. It says that He is "without father, without mother, without lineage." The same expressions appear in the letters of his successor. Ebed-Tob, meaning "the servant of good", as His name is read, says: "Behold, neither My Father nor My Mother raised Me to this place; the Word (i.e. the essence of God.) of the mighty King has made Me enter into the house of My Father (so Ebed-Tob is the Son of God the Father, later called the Son of God Jesus)". And again: "Behold, I am not a governor, nor a bearer of authority of the King, My Lord! Behold! I am the King's Ally (because Wisdom and Love are allies in God), and I have offered tribute to the King. Neither My Father, nor My Mother, (but) the Word of the mighty King - (the Wisdom of God) placed Me in 'My Father's House'." (again referring to Himself as the Son of God).

*

10. Both Hommel and Sayce are clear that "the mighty king" of whom Ebed-Tob speaks is not an earthly monarch, but the Deity to whom He owes His (Divine) position and whom He serves (this is the judgement of the scholars). Jerusalem was a strong fortress at that time. The dominion of this property extended over a wide area. (All over the world.) Ebed-Tob says of Himself that He had repaired the roads, especially in the "plain" where Sodoma and Gomorrah stood.

11. I, Jesus as Malchisedek or Ebed-Tob (Ebed-Tob means "servant of God" - Isaiah 42:1), was

not a Canaanite ruler, as Urquhart supposes, but God Himself: Father as Love, Word as Wisdom, King as Holy Spirit.

12. How is it now to be understood that I, Jesus, was God the Father Myself, that I was also the High Priest of God?

13. You can find enlightenment about this in the 1st letter of Peter (2:5), in which it can be seen that the soul of every person should and must be the eternal high priest of the Spirit of God dwelling in their heart, if you want to become the royal priesthood of God, which means the following: The soul, as the wisdom in man, has everything, down to the least thing, to sacrifice to God for glory (1 Cor 10:31) - and Malchisedek - the soul of Jesus, was the Wisdom of God, therefore I was and am according to the soul, the eternal High Priest of My love in the heart, which I call "Jehovah" or "Father".

CHAPTER 32

EMMANUEL IN THE MESSIAH AND THE SUFFERINGS ON THE CROSS

Proof of the incarnation of God in the person of Jesus Christ and that therefore God the Father, the Son of God and the Holy Spirit is one and the same Person.

1. 726 years before Christ, on October 14th, the prophet Isaiah wrote: "God Himself will give you a sign: Behold a virgin is with child and will bear a son, whom she will call Immanuel (Isa 7:14).

2. Isaiah is one of the great prophets of God, and the question arises: Could this clever man have written something so absurd if he had written from within himself? For to be pregnant, to bear a son and yet be called a virgin is an impossibility in human terms, but different with God, because the same God who created Adam and Eve without parents, could - through the soul of Jesus - which was formed from the Wisdom of God in the form of the human body, form the human body of the Messiah from the blood of Mary.

3. As for the name 'Immanuel', it is known from My youth[113] history that neither Mary (2 Samuel 7:12-16; Luke 1:26-35) nor Joseph nor anyone else called the child Jesus 'Immanuel', but the Messiah - that Jehovah Himself will step into the flesh. So when Mary and Joseph told people that the little miracle worker was Jesus, the Messiah, they said: 'Immanuel' or 'God is with us', or: 'Jehovah is with us in Jesus'. King David's prophecy point to the Son of God - calling Him God and calling Him the Anointed One or Messiah (Ps 45):

4. [7] (6)Your throne, Oh God, stands forever and ever; the sceptre of a kingdom is a just sceptre.

5. [8] You love righteousness and hate the ungodly being, therefore God, your God, (John 14:28; -16:28) has anointed You with oil of joy (Isaiah 61:1; -Daniel 9:25; Acts 10:38) before Your (temporal) comrades. (Heb 1:8,9). I, Jehovah testified 1043 years earlier in Psalm 24:7-10 of My incarnation in Christ: “Make wide the gates (those are the receptive hearts) and high the doors of the world (those are the noble human virtues), that the King of Honour Jehovah Zebaoth, the Mighty and Strong, (namely the Holy Spirit of God's Love) may enter with honour (into the world of His children).”

6. In the year 725 before Christ, I Jehovah gave the following prophecy through the prophet Isaiah (9:5), which refers to the birth of God's incarnation in Jesus: “A child is born to us, a son is given to us, on whose shoulder rests the dignity of a ruler, and whose name is called (full name): Wonderful, Counsel, Strength, Hero, Eternal Father, Prince of Peace.” These names are the names of God in their fullness, as follows:

I. The name of the newborn boy Jesus is: "The Father from Eternity". This is the proof that in Messiah, God the Father Himself will enter into the flesh.

II. But through this also the second name "Wonderful", is clear, because God is wonderful as Creator of the world, as this is His special property, which nobody can imitate Him, nor will ever be able to imitate him, because nobody is God-Spirit as the Ether-Spirit of the universe, who is represented everywhere in the whole world under the simple name Ether Air and as such is active in its Divine omnipotence through magnetism and electricity,

since in these two are the Divine Love and Wisdom veiled from your eyes.

7. That I, Jesus Christ Myself was indeed the wonderful Creator of the world, Peter tells you in the Epistle to the Hebrews 1:2 and Paul to the Colossians (1:13-17).

8. The creation of the world came into being through the omnipotence of God - which is the Holy Spirit - and in which the Father and the Son - or Love and Wisdom - are included in God. This is what this proof teaches you, My proof that deals with and explains the Godhead in Christ.

9. But one should not think that Peter and Paul, in their great partiality for Christ, have therefore made Me the Creator of the world. No! It was not a partiality, but the inspiration of the Holy Spirit that led these two main apostles[114] (the third main apostle was John) to write what they wrote, for in the first book of Moses you will find the name "Elohim"[115], which is the Holy Spirit in God, and who is I, Christ, (1 Corinthians 1:24; Luke 24:49; Acts 2:1-4) mentioned by Moses as the Creator of the world. (The Hebrew Bible has always cited Elohim and Jehovah, as it was in the original of Moses, thus revealing the previous translation-errors in the Bible).

III. The third name of the boy is 'Counsel of the Eternal God the Father', thus none other than the Divine Wisdom, which conceived the colors, assimilations[116], (that is: comparisons, equalizations, transformations of the natural substances) forms and kinds in the great creation.

IV. The fourth name of the boy is the 'Power of God', the same is also said by Paul to the Corinthians 1:24, but the power of God is the Holy Spirit or Elohim according to John 14:26, who is described: the Comforter (Greek: *Paraklet*) But you are to stay in the city of Jerusalem until you are endowed with the power from on high (Luke 24:49), which was the Pentecost baptism of fire of the Holy Spirit. (Read the *Holy Trinity* ChtS 37, Part I; - Acts 2:1-4.) Now it is clearly expressed that the Holy Spirit, through whom the apostles received the Divine gifts and graces, is precisely the All-might or Omnipotence of God, which proceeds from the Father and the Son, as the heat comes from the fire-flame and its light.

V. The fifth name is that Jesus is 'Divine Hero'. Under this name is to be understood My heroic nature, as the great Man of sorrows and patient suffering of Golgotha. Here you should not put before your eyes the Son of Man Jesus, but rather the Almighty God, before whose slightest hint the foundations of the earth tremble, and behold, this almighty God, this High Holiness, before Whose incarnation the highest archangels of Wisdom and Love - called cherubim and seraphim - only approached in deepest humility and were not allowed to look at and contemplate the Divine high holiness, had his hands bound in the Garden of Gethsemane by the minions of the temple, treated like an arch-criminal and led into the court-house before Caiaphas.

*

32.1 The martyrdom of Jesus

10. Accompany Me, Jesus, after the judgement scene into the court of Caiaphas. Here My eyes were blindfolded and the henchmen began to spit at Me, to slap Me and to strike Me on the cheek, laughing scornfully at Me as if I would be a sorcerer, asking Me to tell them who has done this and that to Me. But I kept silent like a lamb and let everything come over Me.

11. The third big scene took place at Pilate's court. Tied naked to a post, the barbarians mercilessly beat Me. Each blow penetrated deep into My innermost soul! The body began to swell, the red blood turned black, the skin burst here and there and the blood ran down from Me

in torrents, so that I was completely wounded, swollen and covered with blood. As if that was not enough of devilish heartlessness - since the Roman soldiers heard that I had been called the King of the Jews - their hatred of the Jews gave them the gruesome idea, strengthened by the hellish spirit-world's mischievous whispers, of crowning Me with a crown of thorns to mock the Jewish people. So they plaited a crown of thorns out of acacia branches and put it on My head, struck thirty of the seventy-two thorns into My head with a reed, which was then given to Me as a sceptre in My hand.

12. I suffered unspeakable pain from the thirty pointed thorns, of which three large thorns penetrated My ears and were therefore deadly. But I prevented Myself from dying of it, because I had to taste and drink the cup of suffering to the limit and finish it to the end, as it was announced in advance by the prophets David, Isaiah and Daniel. This horrible crowning of thorns, however, was meant more for hell than for mankind, for it was the spirits of hell that inspired the barbaric soldiers to commit this horrible crime, and therefore they were in highest dismay when they saw that I, Jesus, accepted the fight for victory against Satan and his followers and emerged gloriously as Victor, for the heavenly spirits made it clear to them that with this, the end of the former time of earthly and spiritual hell was initiated, or ceremoniously brought about.

13. I, Jesus, would have collapsed in pain at this terrible crowning of thorns, if My Divine nature had not sustained Me! The blood now ran down from My head on all sides, which I greedily sucked up as much as came to My mouth to quench the terrible wound and pain fever, which wanted to consume My body like fire.

14. After the henchmen had smashed the crown of thorns into My head with the reed and given it into My hand as a king's sceptre, they forced Me to stand there with the crown of thorns and the sceptre like a king, then they laid My garments at My feet, knelt down on them and greeted Me with infernal mocking laughter; 'Greetings, King of the Jews! Now you will no longer desire to play the role of a king; for hopefully this will be a sufficient lesson for you as to how we Romans deal with such a vagabond as you are!'

15. Behold, this was the deepest humiliation and contempt for Me, the Almighty God and Lord and King of the world, but the Divine Hero remained calm and silent in His infinite love for the redemption of the children; for the greatness of the swaying battle with Satan in man, against whom I was to fight and emerge victorious through love, humility and patience with superhuman effort, was the Divine Hero's great prize. Now we climb the hill of Golgotha, where I, the Divine Hero, was to die for the original sin of all mankind. Suddenly you hear big but blunt nails hammered into the hands and through the crossed feet with enormous hammer blows. In the most unspeakable pains you hear groaning and the words of mercy for the tormentors and crucifiers of My person call out to My Love for My children in My heart: "Father, forgive them, for they know not what they do!" This deed was the noblest in the life of Jesus, because to suffer so terribly and to ask for forgiveness of their sins and crimes for the bloodhounds and hyenas in human form, that is superhuman - that is the deed of God, it was the greatest heroic deed of Divine patience.

16. But it was already near 3 o'clock in the afternoon and there the Deity withdrew from under the mortal covering of My body and gave the body over to material death, for what reason I called out in a loud voice: “My God! My God! Why have you forsaken Me?!” The intellectuals stumble over these words and say: Yes, if Christ was God, why did He cry out, 'My God, My God, why hast Thou forsaken Me!' To which God did He then call?! About that I, Jesus, answer you Myself: (Words on the cross) It was not another God besides Me to whom I called out to, but the Godhead in Me[117], God's Spirit and Primordial Power in its full measure; only the bodily shell was made of earthly material, just as it is with the children of man, and this must also be

subservient to Me. That is why matter, in its abandonment - when the hour of death approached and the Spirit had to leave the body in order for it to die - sought help, as an example that every human being on earth should seek help from God alone.

17. On the cross I asked My Love in My heart for the forgiveness of the sins of My bloodthirsty enemies and what did they do to Me. Now, when I was lifted up into the heights half-dead, the hellish spectacle of the Pharisees and their temple-people began anew in response to My love and mercy: "Come down, Son of God! Come down if you are the king of the Jews! Then we will believe in you. He has helped others; He cannot help Himself. Now let Jehovah help Him if He is pleased with Him!" Behold, these were decisive words of the deepest mockery that made My Heart highly indignant. I had to call on My last power of humility, love and mercy to endure this mockery - because if I had not endured it, then I would have descended from the cross as if nothing had happened to Me, and - as the mighty God and Judge - I would have seized the world in its foundations - and with it the whole creation - and would have turned it into atoms and destroyed it. But I endured and conquered the redemption of mankind from original sin through My death on the Cross and died the heroic death as the Victor of Golgotha!

18. Finally the third hour of the afternoon came and I called out the seventh and last word on the cross: "It is finished!", bowed My head and died. With this, the heroic struggle of the victory of Golgotha was sealed and a new life of the spirit shall now begin as a continuation of the heroic struggle for the continuance and enactment of the spiritual life that had begun. On the third day at three o'clock in the morning, I - the Hero, believed to be dead - rose gloriously from the dead, thus sealing the Divinity of My Being as well as My Teaching, for which I gave testimony in life, that the gates of hell will not overcome it. And indeed it did not, although they have raged against it throughout all centuries of their existence and still rage today!

VI. The sixth name of the newborn boy is called 'Prince of Peace', namely of the spiritual life, as I revealed Myself to Pilate: "I am King, but My Kingdom is not of this world." (John 18:36,37)

*

32.2 About the coming of Jesus

19. In 724 before Christ, Isaiah prophesied that the voice of a preacher in the wilderness (which was the voice of John the Baptist) would appear as a herald and preach to the world that they should convert and repent to receive the Almighty God Jehovah, who will come into the world as Messiah; and that the lowly, the ruling and the high should be placed as equals before God, in one human family as brothers among each other. (Isa 40:3-4)

20. The prophet Micah prophesied 719 years beforehand, that in Bethlehem - the birthplace and father city of David - the Messiah, the Divine Ruler from eternity would be born, Who - according to the prophet Jeremiah (Jeremiah 10:10; 1 Timothy 1:17) - is none other but God Self. (Micah 5:1) Therefore I, Jesus, told the Jews that before Abraham was, I was (John 8:58). So the Wisdom of God said in Christ at the Last Supper to the Divine Love: "Father, I glorified You on earth; now Father, glorify Me also with You with the glory that I had with You before the world was." (John 17:4.5) For the Wisdom of God, spiritually called the 'Son of God', is the very Sovereign from eternity, King of kings and Lord of lords of the world, who was born in Bethlehem through the Virgin Mary. (Revelation 17:14; -19:16)

21. The last prophecy that God Jehovah or Father and Creator of the world will come Himself into the flesh as Messiah or Christ, was made by the prophet Malachiah, 440 years before Christ with the decisive and clear words: “I, Jehovah, am sending you My angel Elijah, who is

to prepare the way before Me" (Mal 3:1-24)[118] - and this Elijah, who is called Michael[119] the archangel in heaven (*Gospel of John* IX, ch 119), was John the Baptist. (Matt 11:14; -17:10)

22. I, Jesus, told the Jews: "Search the Scriptures, because you think you have eternal life in them; they testify about Me." (John 5:39) Another time I said: "If you will adhere to My teaching, you will become My true disciples, because you will know the truth and the truth will set you free." (John 8:31,32)

23. Daniel 4:34 says that Jehovah is the eternal Truth, as such I called Myself at the Last Supper 146, therefore I was Jehovah and eternal Life, and as such the Spirit of eternal Truth Myself. (John 14:17; -16:13)

*

24. These prophecies clearly state that I, Christ, am God Myself and none other, and that there has never been any other God but Jesus Christ, although My name has never been mentioned before. For in the boy Jesus, all attributes (qualities, characteristics, names) of the Godhead are united - therefore it is obviously proven that God incarnated (stepped into the flesh) and revealed Himself in the child Jesus. And on the basis of the further proofs through David, Isaiah, Micah and Malachi, you can appreciate the spiritual darkness of men, how they could overlook all this up to this day in order to understand Me, Christ, correctly as God the Father from eternity.

25. The apostle John speaks just as clearly that God Himself became human in Christ, saying: "In the primordial foundation of the foundations of eternities was the Word, and the Word was with God, and God was the Word, and the Word became flesh in Jesus and dwelt among us." (John 1:1,3, 14 - Since God has no beginning, only the above reproduction of the meaning of the Word, which is identical to the Hebrew original, is correct).

26. The spiritual meaning of this verse is this: Wisdom was God's Word, this Wisdom was God Himself, but this Wisdom became man in Christ. This is why people said: God ruled the world in the Old Testament through His Wisdom or righteousness; after the Wisdom in Christ has passed completely over into Love - as the scene of Golgotha proves - the Wisdom of God, after the death on the cross, after all conditions of Love for Wisdom were fulfilled, has united with the Love of God into a Being of love, which is spiritually called 'Father', and therefore in the New Testament, the Love of God, which you call "our dear Father Jesus", rules the world.

27. In addition to the evidence cited, there is also the following:

I. I, Jesus, said to John (10:30): "I and the Father are one", (-12:45): "He who sees Me, sees Him who sent Me." And at the Last Supper (-14:9) I said to Philip's simple question: “I have been walking with you for so long and you have not yet recognized Me? Philippe! He who sees Me, sees God the Father, how can you still ask and say: show us the Father?"

II. Paul says in the Epistle to the Romans (9:5): "Christ is God above all things", and "in Christ all the fullness of the Godhead dwells bodily." (Col 2:9) And more than a whole fullness of the Godhead does not exist. This is why I, Jesus, said: "I am the door (to eternal life), he who enters through Me (acknowledging God the Father) will be saved, but he who enters elsewhere, is a thief and robber ."(John 10:1,9,38).

III. The unity of My Self with God the Father, I made known with these words: "If I do the works of the Father, you do not believe that I am the Son of God (after the soul); therefore believe the works (which only God can do); that you may be enlightened from above and

see and believe that the Father (as the Love in God) is in Me and I (His Wisdom) am in the Father." (John 10:38) That is why I said at the last supper: "Father, all that is Mine is Yours and all yours is Mine." (John 17:10) for Jesus' Wisdom was God the Father's Wisdom and God the Father's Love was Jesus' Love.

IV. The apostle Judas, in verse 25 also openly confesses: "To the God who alone is wise, to our Saviour (in Christ) be glory and majesty, power and authority now and forever. Amen."

*

32.3 About the Holy Trinity

28. There are many teachers of religion today who do not acknowledge Me, Jesus, as God and who dare to claim that Jesus never spoke of a personal God.

29. I, Jesus, was after all in person God Myself, as My life-story teaches you. Whoever does not understand these proofs that are compiled here, how can he be a teacher of others? He becomes a false prophet, even if his efforts are honest. That is why everyone should first acquire My true teaching himself and recognize Me out of it, only then he becomes qualified to teach others.

30. In Paul's first epistle to Timothy, Paul, in his love for Me, exclaims: "To Him (Jesus), the eternal King, the Imperishable, the Invisible, to the one God, glory and praise be to the one God for all eternity! Amen." It can be seen from this that Paul finally knew exactly the basic nature of God in Christ, although at first it is sometimes evident that Paul separated Me, Christ, from God the Father and regarded Me merely as the Son of God. Only in recent times, Paul knew exactly the mystery of God in Christ, as the above expression indicates, and as other news from him unambiguously proves.

31. Paul says in the 1st epistle (1:24) to the Corinthians: "Christ is Divine Wisdom and Power." But if Christ is the Divine Wisdom and Power or Omnipotence, so also the Divine Love, which is called 'Father' in God, will not be far from it, that is why I said at the Last Supper that the Father God dwells in Me (John 14:10,11) and that I am God the Father Myself. (John 14:6-9) So if in Jesus the Divine Love dwells as Father, the Divine Wisdom as Son and the Divine Power as Holy Spirit and form the Being of God, it is nevertheless evident that apart from Christ, there will never be another God anywhere else.

32. The evangelist John, who through his love has penetrated deepest into the mystery of God in Christ, clearly states: "Christ is the true God and eternal Life." (1 John 5:20). With these words, John ruled out any misinterpretation that there is another God besides Christ, another Creator, another heaven than in Jesus Christ, because with the above words, everything has been said that you need to know - because you are only to seek the true God your Father, who is eternal Life and includes all heavens in Him.

33. Therefore, in Christ you have the Holy Trinity of God before you, because I, Christ the Crucified, am God alone over all heavens and over everything that fills infinite space. I alone am the original Creator of all things, of all angels, humans, animals, plants and all matter.

34. I am the Father according to My eternal Love-Being, the eternal Son of My Wisdom, and the only Holy Spirit according to My infinite power, strength and effect. For there has never been a three-person God, because neither the patriarchs, nor the prophets, nor the apostles knew anything about it. In Me, Christ, God first created for Himself a visible human body, in which He dwells, rules the world and lets Himself be seen by His children in His heavenly glory and

holiness, which gives the greatest joys of love and enjoyment to the blessed.

35. Peter wrote in Hebrews 13:8: "Jesus Christ, yesterday and today and the same forever." These few words embrace the eternity of Christ; for yesterday is past time; today means the eternal presence of God; and in eternity, this word means the infinity of Jesus Christ, always the same God from eternity to eternity, the same Father of humans, the same Creator and the same Ruler from the days of eternity, as I prophesied through the prophet Micah.

36. From these facts [is] proven, it is certain, as Peter (Acts 4:12) said to the assembled Temple Council: "There is in no other salvation, no other name under heaven given to man, in which we should be saved, than Jesus Christ."

CHAPTER 33

SUPPLEMENT TO THE BOOK "THE HOLY TRINITY"

1. The doctrine of the Holy Trinity is contained in the arguments presented so far and also in the book "*The Holy Trinity*", where can be read about the impossibility of a three-personal God who is independent in every person, because it is a clear illumination of this nonsense of a fantasy-monster of human beings.

2. The Father is the basic Love and the basic Power that sustains the world, for the Son is only the Wisdom of the Father and the Holy Spirit is the Willpower of the Father, which proceeds from Love and Wisdom, or from the Father and the Son, and works to carry out what Love and Wisdom have decided to do. The names in God are: for Love, Jehovah or Father; for Wisdom, Son of God; and for Divine willpower, God's power, power from above, Spirit of God, Spirit of the holiness of God*, Spirit of truth, Aelohim and in the New Testament, "Holy Spirit, Omnipotence of God and Grace.

3. At the Council of Nicaea in 325, the Roman Church came forward with the news that there was a duality - Father and Son, according to the misunderstood words of Jesus: I and the Father are one (John 10:30) and: Whoever sees Me sees the One (Father) who sent Me (John 12:45), hence one God in two persons. At that time, however, there was already talk of the Trinity, but the clear concept of what the Spirit of God actually is, was not yet there.

4. 56 Years later, or in the year 381, the Church Assembly was in Constantinople and now the Roman Church came out with its new discovery that God is not a two-personal, but actually a three-personal [God], which Trinity is called Father, Son and Holy Spirit, and which must be strictly separated from each other. For the Father is the Creator, the Son the Redeemer or Mediator, and the Holy Spirit the Enlightener, the Holy One who works in man. According to the Nicaean-Constantinopolitan Creed, the Athanasian Creed[120] was then written, from which the abominations of desolation of the Divine name descended. For the Father is the Creator, the Son the Redeemer or Mediator, and the Holy Spirit the Enlightener, the Holy One who works in man.

5. The Lutheran Church teaches the same thing that it took over from the Roman Church in this respect, and so also that without faith in three persons, one cannot be saved, but will be lost forever. But neither the Roman Church nor the Protestant Church considers that no-one has ever seen God in three persons, but only in one - in Whom I, Jesus, walked! Didn't the Old Testament say that whoever saw the angel of Jehovah - or through whom Jehovah revealed himself to the Israelites - had to die, and that you cannot see Jehovah and live? Jehovah's Spirit was seen as a flame from the burning bush, as a fiery tongue at the baptism at Pentecost, as a white cloud over the tabernacle of the congregation by day, as a fiery cloud at night, and as a cloud resembling a dove at the baptism of Christ in Jordan. Neither Moses at Sinai nor anyone else has seen Jehovah's Spirit in His absolute form, but only [heard Him] speaking through the form of an angel. How then can one assert the nonsense that besides Me, Christ, there are two other persons, the Father and the Holy Spirit?! Is a reasonable person obliged to indulge in nonsense once he has learned the pure truth?! Therefore, do not let yourselves be kept in darkness any longer, for only faith will be your judge in the hereafter, as everyone will be blessed (or un-blessed) according to his faith, and because there are no three persons in God Christ, therefore you can never see God, as there is no three-person God.

6. I, Christ, am the Divine Wisdom (Cor 1:24), called the Son of God in spiritual language.

(Revelation in Christian-Theosophical scriptures) I am the Divine power or Holy Spirit (Luke 24:49 compared to the baptism of Pentecost, Acts 2) and the Father-God is in Me, (John 14:10,11) as it is said in the Holy Scripture. According to the revelations of the prophets and apostles, I am God Himself and nobody else, so believe the words of the Scriptures, which God spoke through the prophets and apostles, but not the erring people of past centuries, who in their spiritual eclipse brought up the nonsense of the three-personal God!

7. The evidence of how the Holy Trinity is to be understood according to the records of the Bible, is given in the book "*The Holy Trinity*". How wrongly you understand this most important teaching of teachings, is proven to you by the evidence-based remark in it: "Millions of readers of the Holy Scriptures and just as many millions of darkness of mind!" I, Jesus, ask you: Is even one term correct according to your previous assumption? No! Not a single one! Everything you have thought, believed, written and taught about God is nonsense! So if the Bible itself gives such proofs about you, why would you want to cling to the old, self-acclaimed interpretation of the Bible any further! Read the book and see for yourself how devastatingly the Bible itself condemns you!

8. I am your God, Creator, spiritual King and Judge, on whom your soul's salvation depends and at the same time your spiritual Father and Saviour, that is why it is indicated that you should take care to know Me, as I am also at the same time your Spirit (*Announcements* 1, 105) and read the books which I let you write for your instruction and enlightenment, because a false faith in the spirit realm is an obstacle for you to reach the enjoyment of your reward.

9. To illuminate the question of the Trinity, consider the following, which is not mentioned in the book in question:

> In the 1st book of Moses, chapter 1 verse 27, it says: God created man in His own image and likeness. But God consists of the Holy Trinity: Father, Son and Holy Spirit, which are called three persons by the Church. Now if there had ever been a three-person God, I as Christ - since I Myself am God the Father, Son and Holy Spirit - would have come into the world in a threefold person, since Peter (Hebrews 1:3) and Paul (1 Colossians 1:15) teach that I, Jesus, am the image of God.

10. The question is: What form should man have, since God actually created the forefather Adam in His spiritual image at the beginning, while the fleshly-material form appeared after the sin?[121] (*Christian Theosophical Prayer Book*, keyword Adam.)

11. You humans are the children and descendants of Adam and Eve in the flesh, and since every father creates his children in his fleshly likeness, therefore you too are all just one-personal, just as your forefather Adam was once one-personal.

12. So if the Holy Trinity really consisted of 3 persons, then every human being as the image of God according to Adam, would have to consist of 3 persons, therefore of 3 bodies, 3 heads, 3 faces, 3 noses, 3 mouths, 6 eyes, 6 ears, 6 hands and 6 feet. The question is: Which head would have the right to think and which mouth would have the privilege to speak? Which one to eat? And if the mouth of one body were to eat, would the other two people or bodies not die of hunger? How would three hands bring a spoon to your mouth? How would the 6 feet go forward: like 3 people walking side by side, or like 3 people walking one after the other? Anyway, how would this monster of a three-person God or man look like?

13. You humans are through the incarnation of God in Christ, a spiritual and carnal image of God, since you are children of God, and you have only one body and are therefore only one person, as I, Jesus, your heavenly Father, was only one - and not three-persons walking visibly on earth. My disciples Peter, John and Jacob saw Me in Divine form at the Transfiguration on

Mount Tabor; but only in one person and not in three. From this, everyone can clearly understand the truth about the Holy Trinity of God.

14. Note the fact that I, Jesus, your God and spiritual Father, became your brother through the incarnation, because I became man, but a single person and not triple person.

15. Instead of still further illuminating this your previous religious nonsense, I draw your attention to the fact that the human form was from eternity predestined for Me, the Son of God Jesus Christ, because in the Son, the eternal Father God and Holy Spirit became man simultaneously.

16. Think sensibly and you will find that the true name for three equal God-persons is impossibly different from three gods, as well as the name for three-human persons is three humans. The reason that this is not noticed, is because people have matured to the point where My prophecy in Jehovah came true: "Behold! Darkness covers the earth (that is, people) and darkness covers the nations (Isaiah 60:2). The spiritual trinity of man as a child of God was described in the *Holy Trinity*.

17. In the New Testament you come across a questionable passage, which the evangelist John wrote, and which reads: “The Holy Spirit was not yet there, because Christ was not yet transfigured, so that those who believed in Him might receive the Spirit.” (John 7:39)

18. The meaning of this reservation of the Evangelist is the following: That I, God, have not yet distributed the graces of My Holy Spirit to those who believed in Me, because I, God in Jesus, still walked among humans and let the gifts and graces of My Holy Spirit take effect and appear through various miracles.

19. The transfiguration of Christ was, as the sources of the New Testament show you, the great love of God towards His children, so that I Myself endured the greatest humiliation and suffering to wipe out the guilt of original sin, through which - from Adam - all men as Adam's spiritual descendants, was cut off from the way to the Father. Through the glorious resurrection that followed, the Ascension and the outpouring of the Holy Spirit at Pentecost, all this has been set in motion, which the verses of the evangelists speak of.

20. That the Spirit of the holiness of God of the Old Testament is the same as the Holy Spirit of the New Testament, and that therefore the latter was already called and designated as such in Christ before the Incarnation of God, can be seen from the following five scriptural passages:

I. The evangelist Matthew says in 1:18, that Mary became pregnant by the Holy Spirit;

II. The angel tells Joseph in a dream: 'What is generated in Mary is of the Holy Spirit' (Matt 1:20);

III. The same angel Gabriel told Mary: 'The Holy Spirit will come upon you and overshadow you' (Luke 1:35);

IV. Luke 1:41 tells that Elizabeth was filled with the Holy Spirit when Mary came to visit her;

V. and that Zechariah became full of the Holy Spirit at the birth of His Son. (before the birth of Jesus; Luke 1:67)

21. According to My new revelations, "holiness in God" means the Wisdom of God and this am I, Jesus, according to My soul (see before chap. XI and XVI; - *Book of Wisdom* chap. 7). I, Jesus also called My Holy Spirit the Spirit of Truth and this because I, Jesus, as the incarnated Jehovah, was the Eternal Truth Myself (Daniel 4:34; John 14:6) and therefore I Myself was the

Spirit of Truth (John 14:6,17; 16:13; *Holy Trinity*) and therefore the Holy Spirit as the Divine Power and Omnipotence of the eternal Father (Isaiah 9:5) in the universe.

CHAPTER 34

A questionable Bible verse from the Bible translation of Martin Luther

Schumi speaks:

During an enlightenment about the Holy Trinity, I, Schumi, was given the following Bible passage as an objection to My Bible-based enlightenment that there is no three-person God, namely:

1 Moses [Genesis - Tr] 19:24: "Then the Lord sent down rain of brimstone and fire from the Lord from heaven upon Sodoma and Gomorrah." According to this Biblical passage, the objector thought that there are after all two lords in heaven, because the one lord let brimstone and fire rain down from heaven from the Lord, so one is merely lord, but the second is the Lord of heaven. This contradiction, however, only exists because of the incorrect translation of the Bible, translating Jehovah with Lord, which is incorrect, because Jeoua means God "Father" in original Hebrew, but not Lord. Now read the same verse according to another correct translation, which is:

1 Moses 19:24: "Then the LORD sent down rain of brimstone and fire from the LORD (or from Himself), from heaven down to Sodom and Gomorrah." Since there have never been two Jehovahs or two Father-Gods, only the incorrect translation and the unclear connection of the words are to blame for the fact that the Bible is then misinterpreted and decidedly claimed that there are more lords, although the whole Bible provides the evidence against this. Also the objections against the 3 angels with Abraham, of which one was Jehovah (Gen 18:2,16,33; -19:1) (what were the other two then?) are unnecessary, if one keeps in mind the fact that in the Old Testament, Jehovah spoke through the body of an angel who carried the name Jehovah and that only through the incarnation of Jehovah in Jesus, God created a visible human body for Himself.

*

Zurich, 21 July 1904

(Father Jesus gives clarification on the enigmatic Lord
who stands between Jehovah and David and is described as Lord over David).

1. David says: "Jehovah said to My Lord, 'Sit at My right hand until I make your enemies the footstool of your feet." (Ps. 110:1) Not everyone understands this saying, for it is meant and signified spiritually: That I, Jesus Christ, as the Wisdom in God - to Whom the rule of the world has been handed over from Love in God - is understood to be Ruler and Judge of mankind in love, until all men come to the understanding that I am the Father and Son - and then all discord of religious differences in opinion about Me cease.

CHAPTER 35

JEHOVAH AS JESUS CHRIST

Zurich, 16-20 May 1904

1. The meaning of the words Moses wrote about the Fall of Man, is the following:

I. 1 Moses 3:15 - I, Aelohim (Aelohim means the power of God, who is the Holy Spirit, who proceeds from the Father and the Son and is therefore God Himself) will send a Savior who will deliver you from the sin you have committed.

II. Isaiah 59:20 says: "For Zion the Savior (or Redeemer) will come, to those who turn from sin in Jacob (or in Israel), says Jehovah."

III. Isaiah prays (64:8) to God and says: Jehovah! You are our Father; we are clay, You are our Maker (or Creator), and we are all the work of Your hands, (thus, children of God).

IV. Isaiah 43:14,15 - Thus says Jehovah your Saviour, the Holy One in Israel: I am Jehovah your Holy One, the Creator, your King.

V. Isaiah 44:24 - This is how Jehovah, your Saviour and Builder in the mother's womb: I am Jehovah, who creates all things, Who alone have stretched out the heavens and spread the earth.

VI. Psalm 19:15 - David said, "Jehovah my rock and my Redeemer."

VII. Isaiah 54:5 - (You soul!) He who created you is your Husband, Jehovah of hosts is His name and is your Saviour, the Holy One in Israel, a God of the whole earth will He be called.

VIII. Jeremiah 50:34 - Strong is their Saviour, Jehovah of hosts is His name.

IX. Isaiah 44:6 - Thus says Jehovah, king of Israel and his Redeemer, Jehovah Zebaoth, "I am the first and I am the last, and there is no God but Me."

X. Psalm 130:7,8 - Hope in Jehovah, Israel - because with Jehovah there is mercy and mighty salvation. He will redeem Israel from all its iniquities.

XI. Psalm 78:35 - They remembered that Jehovah is their Rock, and their Saviour is the exalted God.

XII. Isaiah 54:78 - I have forsaken you (Israel) only for a short time; but with everlasting grace will I have mercy on you, says Jehovah your Saviour.

XIII. Isaiah 49:7 - Thus saith Jehovah, the Redeemer of Israel, his Holy One: They shall see kings, and shall arise, and the princes shall fall down before Jehovah, Who shows Himself faithfully as the Holy One in Israel. [He] Who has chosen you.

XIV. Isaiah 48:17 - Thus says Jehovah your Saviour, the Holy One in Israel, I am Jehovah your God, who teaches you what is useful and guides you in the way you walk.

XV. Isaiah 47:4 - Our Saviour is Jehovah Zebaoth, the Holy One of Israel.

XVI. Isaiah 41:14 - I will help you, says Jehovah; and your Savior is the Holy One in Israel.

XVII. Isaiah 45:11,15 - This is what Jehovah, the Holy One in Israel and his Creator, says: You are indeed a hidden God, You God of Israel, the Savior.

XVIII. 2 Samuel 22:2,3 - David said, "Jehovah is my Rock, my fortress and my Deliverer. God is the rock in which I trust, He is the shield and horn of my salvation; You are my protection, my refuge and my Saviour, You who deliver me from iniquity.

XIX. Isaiah 60:16 - You shall know that I am Jehovah, your Saviour and your Redeemer, the Mighty in Jacob.

XX. Isaiah 49:26 - Let all flesh know that I am Jehovah your Saviour and your Redeemer, the Mighty in Jacob.

XXI. Isaiah 43:1,3 - Thus says Jehovah, who created you Jacob, and who formed you Israel. Fear not, for I deliver thee; I call thee by thy name; you are Mine. For I am Jehovah your God, the Holy One in Israel, your Saviour.

XXII. Isaiah 43:11 - I am Jehovah, and apart from Me there is no Saviour (or Redeemer).

XXIII. Isaiah 45:21 - I, Jehovah, have done everything. And there is no other God but Me; I am a just God and Saviour, and there is no other but Me.

XXIV. Hosea 13:4 - I am Jehovah your God, ... and you shall acknowledge no other God but Me, and there is no other Saviour than Me.

XXV. Isaiah 45:21,22 - I, Jehovah, am a righteous God and Saviour, and there is no God and no Saviour except Me. Turn to Me and you will be saved from all the ends of the earth, for I am God and there is none other.

XXVI. Isaiah 45:14,15 - Jehovah says to Israel, "They will say to you, 'With you is God, and there is no other God but Him. Truly, you are a hidden God of Israel, his Saviour.

XXVII. Malachi 3:1; 4:5 - Behold, I (Jehovah) will send My angel Elijah to prepare the way before Me. And there will come to His (spiritual) temple the Lord of hosts, whom you expect and the messenger of God (as the Messiah) of the Covenant, whom you desire, behold, He is coming, He is coming! Say Jehovah of hosts.

XXVIII. Micah 5:2 - And you, Bethlehem Ephratah! Though you are a small place among the families of Judah, from you a ruler of Israel will come forth for Me, whose origin is from the past, from the days of eternity.

XXIX. Isaiah 7:14 - The Lord will give a sign to the house of David and Israel themselves: "Behold! The virgin shall conceive and bear a son, and shall call His name Immanuel, which means "God with us".

XXX. Zephaniah 3:16,17 - In that day they will say to Jerusalem and to Zion, "Jehovah, your God is with you, a strong Saviour."

XXXI. Zechariah 12:1,10 - Jehovah's prophecy about Israel: Thus says Jehovah, who stretched out the heavens and founded the earth and formed the breath (or spirit of God) of the man who is within: On the house of David and on Jerusalem I will pour out the (Holy) Spirit of grace and worship; and they will look up to Me (Jehovah) Whom they have pierced, and mourn over Me as one mourns over an only Son, and grieve over Him as one

grieves over the firstborn.

XXXII. Luke 1:46,47 - Mary said: "Exalt my soul to the Lord and my spirit rejoices over God my Savior.

XXXIII. Luke 2:10,11 - The angel said to the shepherds, "Behold, I declare unto you a great joy which shall be to all the people, that this day the Saviour is born, who is Christ the Lord in the city of David. (By the term "Lord" is spiritually understood, compare *Ze-baoth,* "Lord of Hosts"; this *Dominica* "Lord's Day", or God's Day; Russian: *Gospod* "God"; *Gospod* "Lord"; Church: *kiri-ka* church of *kyrios* gr. "Lord"; - *ka, ca* Indo-European "house")

XXXIV. John 4:42 - The Samaritans said to the woman: "We ourselves have heard and recognized that He is truly the Christ, (or Messiah) the Saviour of the world.

2. The evangelist John brings you several of My sayings, including the following three, by which I, Jesus, called Myself God the Father:

I. John 10:30 - "I and the Father are One."

II. John 12:45 - "He who sees Me, sees the (Father) who sent Me."

III. John 14:8,9,10 - the disciple Philip said to Me: "Lord, show us the Father of whom You speak; and I answered him: "I have been walking with you for so long and you have not yet come to know Me? Philip! He who sees Me sees the Father, so how can you still say: show us the Father?" Do you not believe that I (through My Love) am in the Father, and the Father (through His Love) is in Me? The teachings I am presenting to you are not from Me (the Wisdom of God) Myself, (but also from the Father as the Love in God); but the Father, who dwells in Me through His love, this works the works (through My Love for men).

IV. John 1:1,3,14 - In the primordial foundation of the foundations of eternities was the Word, and the Word was with God and God was the Word and the Word became flesh in Jesus and dwelt among us and we saw His Divine glory at the transfiguration on Mount Tabor.

V. 1 Corinthians 1:24 - Christ is the Divine Wisdom and Power.

VI. 1 John 5:20 - Christ is the true God and eternal life.

VII. Colossians 2:9 - In Christ dwells all the fullness of the Godhead.

VIII. Acts 4:12 - Peter said to the assembled council of the scribes and Pharisees: There is salvation in no-one else, nor is there any other name under heaven given to men, in which we should be saved than Jesus Christ.

3. It is evident from the cited quotations that Jehovah, as Father or Love in God (John 4:8-16), bears all the titles and dignities that I, Jesus, as the embodied Wisdom of God's Love (1 Corinthians 1:24; Isaiah 9:5), then carried spiritually; for I, Jesus, am called Saviour, Redeemer, King, God the Father, which is Jehovah in Hebrew. So also 'Rock' in many verses of the Bible, because Rock represents the truth (5 Moses 32:37; Psalm 18:3; Isaiah 17:10; 26:4; Swedenborg's works) and the truth is called God (Dan 4:34); for the Spirit of Truth - as the cited verses of the Gospel of John show - was I, Christ, therefore God Myself. (John 14:6,17,18; -16:13; John 10:30; -12:45; -14:9) So Jehovah is mentioned in the quotes cited as the Creator of Israel, and John, Peter and Paul tell you that God created the world and everything that exist on it through His Wisdom (which He calls spiritually the Son or Word of God).

4. John 1:30,10; Colossians 1:16; Hebrews 1:2; Isaiah 9:5 says that I, Jesus Christ, created the world. Moses also say: "In the beginning, Aleohim created heaven and earth." But under Aelohim the 'power of God' was understood in the original Hebrew and the 'power of God' is called 'Christ' by Paul. (1 Cor 1:24) This power now appears according to the facts of Holy Scripture, as the Holy Spirit (Luke 24:49; John 14:16-18,26; 16:13; Acts of the Apostles, chapter 2; 1 Corinthians chapters 11 and 14; *Holy Trinity*, chapter IV) and the Holy Spirit is the agent of the Love, Wisdom and Omnipotence of God.

5. Swedenborg, the most important clairvoyant of the eighteenth century, remarks about the history of creation that in the true heaven, where the children of God go, no other God is known than I, Jesus Christ.

CHAPTER 36

The Spirit of Jesus Christ as the Spirit of God in man

1. That the Spirit of Christ dwells in you, is testified in a passage from Paul (Gal 4:6), which reads: "Because you are children of God, therefore God has sent the Spirit of His Son into your hearts, who cries, 'Abba, dear Father'!"
2. Paul says the same thing in Romans 8:15-17 - "You have not received a spirit of slavery (from God), that you should fear the death of the flesh (when the will of God is fulfilled); but you have received a childlike spirit (of the Love of God), in which we call 'Abba, dear Father'. "This (Divine Jesus') Spirit gives our (character of our being) mind the conviction that we are children of God. But if we are children, we are also heirs, both heirs of God (of His worlds) and co-heirs of Christ, (if we walk in His footsteps) through suffering to the glory of heaven.
3. Further evidence of the indwelling of God in you can be found in the following passages of Scripture: Paul says: "Whoever rejects the (pure) Word of God (as Christ Himself recited it during His three years of teaching), does not reject the person who spoke it, but God, whose Spirit we possess." (1 Tess 4:8)
4. To the Ephesians in 4:6, Paul said, "He is one God and Father of us all, who is above you all and through you all and in you all.
5. Also included here are the passages of Paul, which he wrote to the Corinthians and Romans: "Do you not know that you are the temple of God and that the Spirit of God dwells in you? If anyone corrupts the temple of God, God will corrupt him, because God's temple is holy and you are such a temple." (1 Cor 3:16,17)
6. Furthermore, do you not know that your body is a temple of the indwelling Holy Spirit, whom you have received from God, and that you do not belong to yourselves? (1 Corinthians 6:19)
7. To the Romans (8:11) Paul wrote: "Since the Spirit of Him who raised Jesus' body from the dead dwells in you, He who raised Jesus Christ from the dead, will also revive your dead bodies, because His Spirit dwells in you.
8. In the second letter to Corinthians (6:16), Paul says about the indwelling of God in man: "You are a temple of the living God, as God says: I will dwell in them and walk among them; I will be their God, they will be My people." (if they will keep My commandments)
9. Paul asks his followers, "Do you not know that Jesus Christ is in you? (2 Cor 13:5) And about himself he says: "Christ lives in me". (Gal 2:20)
10. Because I, God, Jesus Christ Myself dwell in you, therefore eternal Love dwells in you, which is heaven in you – therefore, what Luke says about the place where heaven is is true, because He does not say that heaven is above the stars, but: "The kingdom of God is within you." (Luke 17:21) That is why I, Jesus, say in the books I dictated Myself: "I am to be found only in the heart, for I dwell there." (*Once and Now* I, 74, 23. 27) Because God is a Spirit and dwells in the heart of man, that is why I, Jesus, taught: Adore God in the spirit (of your love in your heart - John 4:24 - because this is the quiet chamber where I want to be worshipped in love and humility. (Matt 6:6)
11. In truth, you worship God through the works of love and mercy for your neighbour, of which *The guidance of Dr. Martin Luther in the hereafter* (besides the Good Samaritan) gives the most beautiful and best examples. From this it is evident that My Divine Spirit dwells in every man - because without Me, man would not be human, but an animal being, limited in thinking, creating and visualizing, as the animals are. Since the Spirit of God is no other Spirit than the triune God Jesus Jehovah Zebaoth, who represents Love, Wisdom and Omnipotence as Father, Son and Holy Spirit in spiritual correspondence in God, therefore your task is to make this Spirit alive in you through the love, humility, patience and fulfillment of the Divine Word.

12. The prophets and apostles had the inner word. But do not believe that the prophets and apostles were different people than you are, oh no! They were flesh-men like you and therefore subject to all temptations like you, which Paul himself bitterly complains to you about, that he does the opposite of what he wants to do. Peter said at the fishing miracle: Lord, go away from me, for I am a sinful man; and so you also find great sinners among the prophets - but they repented and I forgave their transgressions and repented with them again.

A remark on this by Schumi:

"So I (Schumi) have also had to work my way through repentance and strict fulfillment of the Divine will, so that I received the prophetic inner word, through which I receive from the Father Jesus words of love to His children and prophecies. And behold, this Father Jesus dwells in me just as Paul said about himself and it is He who dictates to me as Jesus Christ and no-one else. However, one must strictly distinguish the term God's or Father's medium from spiritistic writing mediums, as one distinguishes gold from silver, even more so, sometimes as strongly as one distinguishes gold from lead.

As we stand at the time of Christ's return, all parties to the faith revolve around an urge to seek and search for the truth, because the Spirit of Christ, who dwells in every human being, drives them to do so! But people are so darkened by the misinterpreted words of the Holy Scriptures, that they do not know the holy sun of eternal life, "Jesus Christ", and when they are told by the Christian Theosophical Central Light that we all have our teachings directly from Christ, they do not believe this and brand us and Christ as heretics in the word of His Love. That is why the dear Father Jesus said to me on May 21, 1904, at 6 o'clock in the morning: "As long as you will not make Christ known as God the Father among men, it will not be possible for you to spread Me among the people, namely, our Christian Theosophical books, which are the clouds from which Christ Himself already teaches His children, as it is said in the prophets Isaiah and Jeremiah: 'They will all be taught by God Himself'." (John 6:45) When I asked what I should do, the Father replied: "Hand out the first half of the booklet *Christ and the Bible*!" And so this small but according to its content, important work - has been created.

CHAPTER 37

The reason for Jesus' sufferings

Zurich, 21 July 1904

1. The question why the Jews crucified Me, Christ, is not clear to everyone, so I will answer it briefly:

2. They were the chosen people. I, Jehovah their God, consorted with them and guided them through My prophets and judges. I gave them prophecies that I would come to earth as the heavenly Messiah or King with great glory and deliver them from their fetters.

3. They were worldly, therefore materially-minded people, and therefore they understood the spiritual intended words of the prophecies materially and expected from Me, their Jehovah as Messiah, to free them from the Romans and make them rulers of the world. And because this did not apply to Me, they did not recognize Me and they thought I was a false prophet and instigator of the people against the temple and the Romans, without wanting to stretch out the hand against the Romans themselves. And therefore they took Me captive and crucified Me in their blindness and spiritual darkness. And I allowed them to carry out their crime against Me through which the original[122] sin of Adam and all people coming from him, was blotted out on the cross through My love, so that the children again could reach their spiritual Father from Whom they were separated through original sin until My death on the cross, because I then blotted out their former sin and opened the way to Me.

*

4. One will curiously ask: Yes, what was the reason why God Himself had to suffer for the sins of mankind? Behold, the cause of My suffering for original sin was the following:

5. when I, God, created Adam and Eve, I gave them a strict prohibition against unchastity; but your primordial parents' resistance was weak and they fell. As soon as the sin was committed, Wisdom - which is the holiness in God - burned in zeal, and set the condition that, since in Adam all people coming from him and after him spiritually, committed the sins with him, for all mankind [on earth] originates from the soul-spirit of the primordial parents, they also - each for himself - had to humble himself and go the way of the cross, of suffering and death, to regain the childhood of God lost through original sin, as I, Jesus, later did for all of you.

6. Wisdom's condition did not please Love in God, because it separated you poor creatures [from Him], therefore Love retreated from Wisdom and said to Him: "Do this Yourself, because I do not agree with it!"[123] And as Wisdom, without His Love, was desolate and dull, it accepted the condition set by Himself and also brought it about - because what once Love or Wisdom in God firmly expresses, can no longer be reversed, as weak-willed men are used to do. Thus the holiness of God in Jesus reconciled you children with Himself and opened the highest or children's heaven for you.

7. Therefore I, Jesus, said the following words about My mission to earth: "God so loved the world that He sent His only begotten Son to earth, that all who believe in Him should not perish (spiritually), but gain eternal life." (John 3:16) This is why John the Baptist calls Me, Jesus 'The Lamb of God Who takes away the sins of the world.' (and removes it, John 1:29)

8. In Psalm 3:3-4, David says about the forgiveness of sins (the first covenant through Christ on the cross): "Jehovah forgives all your sins and heals all your infirmities. He redeems your life from destruction and crowns you with grace and mercy."

9. Before I, Jehovah in Christ allowed Me to be captured and killed in the flesh for the sins of the old covenant, there have been several attempts to stone Me (in the temple in Jerusalem and the synagogue in Nazareth) or otherwise capture Me (Luke 13:32), but the time was not yet ripe, as Psalm 21:12 tells us: "They meant to do you harm, and made attacks they could not execute."

10. I reproached the Pharisees for saying, "If we had lived in our fathers' time, we would not have a part in the blame for the blood of the prophets. But with this you testify of yourselves that you are sons of the murderers of the prophets. Because the people openly confessed: 'This is the prophet of which Moses spoke', I, Jesus, made a slight allusion to Myself, about what the Pharisees will also do to Me, calling out to them, "And you make full the measure of your fathers! - You brood of snakes and vipers! How will you escape the sentence of hell?" (Matt 23:30-33)

11. I said: "I have come that I may light a fire (of love for God and neighbour) on earth (among men); what would I rather do than have it burning already! But I must first be baptized with a baptism (by which I prophesied in advance that this would be done in My blood and continued); and how anxious am I until it is completed!" (Luke 12:49-50) - Indicates My pain, which some think that I, Jesus, did not feel any pain! Certainly not as God, but as man, decidedly; otherwise it would have been a deception in the eyes of the spectators and a lie to all men.

12. On another occasion I, Jesus, said to My disciples: "You do not know what you are asking. Can you also drink the cup that I will drink and be baptised with the baptism with which I am baptised?" (Matt 20:22)

13. Peter confirmed (Hebrews 2:11-18): "Jesus called men 'brothers' and was not ashamed of it, saying, 'I will proclaim your name to my brothers, and in the midst of the church I will sing your praises'." (Ps 22:23) And again: "I will put my trust in Him". (Isa 8:17) And again: "Behold, here am I and the children whom God has given Me." (Isa 8:18) Since the children now have flesh and blood, He became equal with them, that through death He might take power away from him that had the power of death, which is the devil, and might redeem them that through fear of death, were servants (of the death of sin) with all their lives. Therefore, however, He had to become like His brothers, so that He might be merciful and a faithful High Priest before God, to reconcile the sins of the people (from the transgressions of the first covenant (Genesis 3:15; Hebrews 9:15; Romans 3:25; Zechariah 11:10). For through the fact that He Himself has suffered and has been tempted, He can help those who are tempted.

14. The prophet Zechariah reports approximately 500 years before My entry into Jerusalem, which I performed on March 21st in the year 33 as the spiritual King of the Jews (Zech 9:9), which was the main reason for My crucifixion on March 25th. The same Zechariah reports that the Messiah will become the victim of the old covenant, which Jehovah thereby abolishes. (Zech 11:10)

15. Finally the time came for Me, Jesus, to crown My task. The teaching had been proclaimed, now the greatest act of love of God for His children still had to be performed, namely to carry out the judgement pronounced by God on them through suffering and the terrible death by crucifixion and thereby to reopen the path to the Father, which was blocked by original sin. The execution of this great act of love by God is indicated in advance by the prophets in the following prophecies that it will be Judas of Kariot who will betray and sell Me, Jesus, to the persecutors - that is, one who will deal with Me, eat My bread and be My disciple. These passages from the prophets, through which I Myself indicated this before, read:

I. In Psalm 41:9-10 - "They have decided a boy's play over Me: When He lies down, He shall not rise again. My friend to whom I entrusted Myself, who ate My bread, also tramples Me underfoot." In another passage is said:

II. Psalm 55:13-15 - “If My enemy maltreats Me, I want to suffer it, and if My hater beat Me, I want to hide Myself from him. But you are My companion, My keeper (Judas of Kariot was a table servant) and My kinsman[124] (as disciples of the teaching of the Spirit of Christ) who were kind to one another among us and walked in the house of God in multitudes" [125] (thirteen together).

III. Obadiah, verse 7, says the prophecy about this betrayal: “The people on whom you put your consolation will deceive and overwhelm you; those who eat your bread will betray you. [15] As you (Judas) has done, (for you has delivered one to death,) it shall be done unto you again: and as you have deserved (even for even), so shall it be done unto your head again.” I, Jehovah, expressed Myself even more clearly about Judas' betrayal and pronounced judgement on him who hanged himself:

IV. Psalm 109:16-19 - "Therefore, because he never thought to practice love, but persecuted a wretched and poor man (as a man) who was despondent in heart to kill Him, let the curse come upon him; for he did not want blessing, let him be far from him! [20] Let this be the reward of My enemies from Jehovah and of those who speak evil against Me.”

V. In Psalm 71:10,11 the event is mentioned when the betrayal happened and Caiaphas advised with his counsels to seize Me, Jesus: "My enemies are speaking against Me and those who are lurking on My Soul are consulting with each other and saying: 'God has forsaken Him; pursue Him and seize Him, for there is no Saviour'."

VI. 465 Years before Christ Zechariah prophesies that Messiah will be sold for 30 pieces of silver, and that this money will then be thrown into the temple by the traitor, so that it will be given to the potter (for the purchased field of blood as burial for strangers (Zech 11:12,13)

VII. In Psalm 31 the scene is immortalized since the year 1043 before Christ, when Caiaphas, before the invocation question whether I, Jesus, was really the Son of God, advised with his counsels how I, Jesus, could be caught with words and condemned to death. (Psalm 31:14)

VIII. Isaiah reports 723 years before Christ that the Messiah will suffer for the sins of the first covenant, namely for original sin (Isaiah 53:4-7; -10:12; - cf. 1 Moses 3:15; Hebrews 9:15; Romans 3:25; Zechariah 11:10)

IX. Isaiah 50:6 reports 725 years before Christ about the beatings, blasphemy and scolding in the court of Caiaphas.

X. Isaiah prophesies 723 before Christ about the scourging of Christ in the court of Pilate. (Isa 53:5)

XI. Isaiah 5:7 prophesied how the Jews would repay My love efforts: "He hoped for justice; and behold: bloodshed (by scourging) for justice; and the cry of lamentation.” (crucify Him!)

XII. David speaks in Psalm 42, verse 10 about that scene when I went the way from Pilate to Golgotha under the pressure of the enemies.

XIII. 717 years before Christ, I - Jehovah through Isaiah - said I will lift (the cross), carry (it

for you), and save you from the great gulf that exists between you and the Father because of original sin. Verily, I will bring help to Zion and show My glory in Israel (Isaiah 46:4,13).

XIV. 1043 years before Christ, David - and 718 years before Christ, Isaiah - reports that Messiah will be pierced at hands and feet and that you will be healed by these taught wounds. (Psalm 22:17; Isaiah 53:5) The fact that Isaiah did not write reports after David's reports is proven by the content of the verse text.

XV. Isaiah says in another passage: "Behold! I have recorded you in both hands, (Isaiah 49:16) (which means the wounds on both hands. Isaiah also says: "And if someone asks Him: What are the wounds in Your hands? Thus he will say: 'I have been crucified in the house of those who love Me' (now), (Zechariah 13:6) which points to the return of Christ. [English Bibles use 'wounded' instead of 'crucified' -Tr.] The exaltation on the cross or crucifixion of Christ is reported by the prophet Isaiah in the year 718 before Christ in chapter 52:13 with the following words: "Behold, My servant (as the Son of Man) will act wisely and will be exalted and very highly exalted."

16. So that nobody whose spiritual light does not yet shine for the grasping of the Divine Bible statements, gets the wrong idea that I have arbitrarily taken the verses and declared them to be for this and that, I have to make it known to you at the same time that I explain nothing to you without higher inspiration. Also I, Jesus, prophesied in several places to all 4 evangelists about My forthcoming exaltation on the cross. (Matt 12:40; -17:12,21; Mark 8:31; -9:30; Luke 18:32; John 3:13; -8:28; -12:32-33)

*

17. About the false accusations before Pontius Pilate, as they can be read at the beginning of the implied death-sentence, and which they brought before Pilate as an accusation, I, Jehovah, spoke through the prophet David in Psalm 109:2-5: "They have opened their ungodly and false mouth against Me (Jehovah) and speak against Me with a false tongue. And they speak venomously against me everywhere, and repeatedly argue against Me without cause. For that I love them, they are against Me. They prove Me evil for good and hatred for love (Ps 109:24,25): My knees are weak from fasting; and My flesh is lean and has no fat. And I must be their mockery; when they see Me, they shake their heads."

CHAPTER 38

Numerous biblical prophecies about the passion of Jesus

38.1 Prophecies about the seven words on the cross

1. At noon, My **first word** on the Cross came to light in the moment of nameless pain, when the dull nails penetrated My tortured flesh and I, overwhelmed by sorrow, cried out to My Love in My Heart, praying for mercy for My tormentors: "Father, forgive them, for they know not what they do!" This purely Divine scene was reported to David (Psalm 109:4,28) and Isaiah. (Isaiah 53:12) About the mockery on the cross, David says 1043 years before Christ: "But I am a worm and not a man, a mockery of the people and contempt of the people; all who see Me, mock Me, open their mouths and shake their heads: He shall lament to Jehovah, He who saves Him, to help Him if He is pleased with Him!" (Psalm 22:7-9; Matthew 27:23)

2. And now I, Jehovah, through the prophet Isaiah 37:23-24, reproached them and told them clearly: "Whom have you (the people of Israel) mocked and blasphemed and against whom have you raised your voice? Against the Holy One (or God) of Israel (Revelation 15:3-4), you have lifted up your eyes! Through your servants you have mocked the Lord!"

3. 1043 Years before Christ, King David prophesied about the **second word** on the cross: "I thirst", namely for redemption from suffering and original sin, whereupon "I was given bile to eat and vinegar to drink." (John 19:28; Psalm 22:16; -69:22)

4. 1036 years before Christ, David prophesied about the **third word** on the cross: "My God, My God, why hast thou forsaken me!" (Ps. 22:1)

5. The **Fourth word**: "Woman, see your son and you, John, see your mother (John 19:26,27; Luke 23:39-43) and:

6. the **Fifth word**: "Verily I say to you: Even today you will be with Me in Paradise", have also been among the prophecies of the prophets, but have been lost.

7. In 1043 before Christ, David recorded the **sixth word** on the cross: "Father, into Your hands I commend My Spirit, You have redeemed Me, Jehovah, You faithful God." (Ps 31:5).

8. 718 years before Christ, Isaiah prophesied the **seventh word** on the cross, which read: "It is finished", through which I freed Israel - that is the human race - from original sin through an eternal redemption. (Isaiah 45:17; Hebrews 9:12,15; -10:10,14.)

*

38.2 Prophecies about the flagellation

9. **The painful scene of scourging to death is in Isaiah 63:1-9:**

I. [1] "Who is He who comes from Edom[126] (**From the mercilessness of the court of Pilate**) with reddish robes of Bozra[127] (**red royal robe**)? Who is so adorned in His garments and who thus walks along in His great (**soul-**) power? It is I who teach righteousness (**Jehovah in Jesus**) and am a Master to help."

II. [2] Why is your dress so red and your robe like a wine-press?

III. [3] I tread the wine-press[128] (**I suffer for salvation**) alone and there is no one among the nations with Me. I have pressed it in My wrath (**"love zeal"**) and trampled it (**eradicated the sins**) in My wrath (**zeal for truth**). Therefore their blood (**love of torture**) is sprinkled on My garments and I have defiled all My garments.

IV. [4] Because I have planned a day of vengeance (**mercy**) for Myself; the year to redeem the ones who are Mine, has come.

V. [5] And I looked around, and there was no helper; and I wondered, and no-one stood by Me, but My arm (**soul-power**) had to help Me, and My anger (**or love-zeal**) stood by Me.

VI. [6] And I trampled them down in My wrath (**freed them from sins in My love-zeal**), and I made them drunk (**filled with love for Me**) in My wrath, and poured out their blood on the earth (**erased torture-sins**).

VII. [7] Now David says, "I will remember the grace of Jehovah and the praise of Jehovah in all that He has done to us, and the great kindness to the house of Israel that He has shown them according to His mercy and great grace."

VIII. [8] For He said: 'They are indeed My people, children who are not false (foreign). Therefore, He (Jehovah) was their Saviour.

IX. [9] Whoever frightened them (what is to follow -) frightened Him also, and the angel of His face (breath of life) helped them. He redeemed them, in His love and forbearance He saved them Himself. He took them in (to His children), in the love in which He carried them since forever.'

*

38.3 Prophecies about the partitioning of robes, spear and legs

10. About the distribution of My garments among the Roman soldiers and the throwing of the lot over My undergarment, David reports 1043 years before Christ in Psalm 22:19.

11. Isaiah reports 717 years before Christ that I, Jesus, will die between two robber-murderers and will be buried in the new tomb of the "rich". (Joseph of Arimathea) (Isa 53:9)

12. Zecharia reports 513 years before Christ about the lance thrust; on which occasion that soldier felt a nameless pain. (Zecharia 12:10; John 19:37) (About My return, it says there): They will look upon Me whom they have pierced (once) and will lament as over the only child and grieve bitterly over Him, as one grieves bitterly over the first-born.

13. That My, Jesus' legs would not be broken as was the custom with the crucified, was spoken of especially by David 1043 before Christ in Psalm 34:20; John 19:31-36; 2 Moses 12) He (Jehovah) preserves all His legs, that not one of them may be broken.

*

38.4 Prophecy about the Cornerstone

14. 1025 Years before Christ, David prophesies that the stone of Divine faith, which the temple priests rejected as the builders of faith, became the cornerstone before Jehovah (Ps 118:22).

15. 300 Years later, or 723 years before Christ, I, Jehovah, said through Isaiah: "I lay in Zion a stone, a proven stone, a precious cornerstone, a firm foundation stone; he who trusts in Him has built well." (Isaiah 28:16)

*

38.5 Prophecies about the victory of Jesus as Christ

16. Psalm 22 from the year 1043 before Christ and Isaiah in chapter 53, from the year 717 before Christ, reports about the suffering of Christ and glorifies the Victor of Golgotha, after which the victorious Psalm 110 follows, where the Victor over Satan of the world is sung about, glorified out of the death of His body until the glorious days of His return and assumption of the spiritual rule of the world.

17. The prophet Isaiah speaks in the name of the people: “Jehovah, You Yourself have lovingly saved my soul from the pit of destruction, for You have thrown all my sins behind You.” (Isa 38:17,20)

18. Gal 3:13 Paul says: "Christ redeemed us from the curse of the law, because He Himself became a curse for us; for it is written

19. in V Moses 21:23: 'Cursed is everyone who hangs on wood'." Neither Moses nor Paul understood this passage; for if this were to be understood materially, I, God in Jesus, would be a cursed one, a condemned one, because I hung for your sins out of love for you! What thoughtlessness - to call Me now cursed before God, for the inexpressible love and mercy - and to teach this boundless nonsense to others! Truly! You should be ashamed with your Bible letter-riding! The word is to be understood purely spiritually and means: *Separated from God* is everyone who - instead of being attached to the spiritual, is attached to dead matter, or to worldliness.

20. In another passage, Paul tells Romans 10:4: "Christ is the end of the law." This passage means that I have erased the law imposed on man: to win again the Divine right of children through suffering and death on the cross, through My own love for the children.

21. The original writings of the prophets were still available in My lifetime; they were only lost during the siege and destruction of Jerusalem. This fact invalidates any accusation of My adversaries of later putting sentences from the life of Jesus into these ancient writings. Anyway, how could I have told the two disciples Cleophas and Barsabas Justus on the way to Emmaus all the passages from the prophets, from Moses to John, about My suffering and death and My resurrection, and how could I have referred to them if it had not been recorded for them already for many centuries, even more than a thousand years?! Therefore, logically thinking people should not make such illogical remarks, since the proofs of the existence of these men are beyond doubt, since there are still buried proofs that will bring the truth of this fact to light; for I, Jesus, your God, have hereby told you in advance!

22. But to give another word of justification for My disciples, who just referred to these old prophetic prophecies about Me, I want to draw your attention to the fact that the Talmund [sic], as the history-book of the Jews, have certainly recorded the great conflict of the Pharisees

against the apostles and evangelists, if the passages quoted from the prophets had not been in it, but had been invented by My disciples and Paul. One must also consider the fact that the Jews had to learn the Bible by heart, as the Protestants do today - how could the slightest swindling and deception have taken place without being immediately noticed and attacked by the Pharisees and all the people?! This only fact that the Talmund does not accuse the apostles and evangelists of falsifying the old scriptures, is enough to recognize My disciples as men of truth. Yes, even more: How is it that just the Orthodox Jews, who still today do not want to know anything about Me, in their Old Testament - of which they have an original copy from the days before Christianity - neither in the year 70 after the destruction of Jerusalem nor later, know anything about a deception in their Bible! This fact is as clear as daylight that one must not speak of a fraud and deception by interpolation or insertion of previously unheard of prophecies, and in such rich quantities, in order not to be laughed at by orthodox Jews themselves.

23. But an objection could also be made that someone would claim: The story of Jesus Christ in the New Testament is a novel from the prophecies about the coming of the Messiah in the Old Testament, thus a finely woven fiction based on the sources of the Old Testament, therefore irrefutable or at least not looking like a novel.

24. This objection can be refuted by the fact that - already at the beginning, the irrefutable proofs from the word by word fulfilled prophecies about the countries Egypt, Babylonia, Phoenicia and Palestine were given; on the other hand, one must take into consideration that an honest man does not consider God, the prophets and apostles to be swindlers and deceivers of the people, but beings of truth in so far as the salvation of the soul of man is concerned.

25. Do not the Old and New Testaments contain all the teachings which state that God is the Author and was given for the salvation of mankind? Only ignorant, thoughtless, and darkened people fail to recognize the words of the Bible of the Old and New Covenants! One enlightened by the Spirit of God, never! Because he penetrates into the depths of the mysteries of God contained in the words of the Bible and basks and rejoices in its Divine light.

26. Do you want to throw out the Holy Bible? You are free to do so, but you have rejected Me, Jehovah in Christ, and that is all you need for your hell! Amen.

27. But one point is still open, namely: there are those who quite simply deny the existence of Christ and the apostles! Now I ask you: How could the New Testament come into being without Christ and without apostles? How could a completely new religion develop under the name Christ and Christian (Christianity)? Who were the heroes of this world-shattering religion who could put something so powerful into action against the pagan gods? Why this enlightened conviction for the truth of the new word, that the confessors came forward in droves and preferred to endure the most terrible agonies of tortures and even death rather than to be turned and distracted otherwise?

28. Every great idea requires sacrifices, so it also did Christianity cost about two million people, and so it was exactly the spirit of power out of My Spirit, that inflamed the brave fighters for truth and let them undauntedly step into death for this faith! This should be taken into consideration by such feeble-minded and thoughtless critics that at the head of every great world-shaking movement, there must be someone for whom the people move, get excited about and make them stand up for the good cause. So I stood, invisible to the fleshly eyes - but spiritually powerfully working in My children - and that was the spiritual fire, which inflamed the courageous fighters for the truth of faith and made them heroes of the cause.

29. Yes, denial is possible with foolish men - but not proof; for hypotheses are not facts, and the

denial of truth without being able to prove that it is not truth, is only honourable before fools - but it never impresses men of seriousness, honesty, and love of truth.

30. There were just thousands upon thousands of eyewitnesses all over Palestine who saw Me personally, heard My teachings recited and saw My miraculous healings for themselves and some experienced them themselves. I was the most famous man, the great prophet, the descendant of their great and famous King David, a son of God, the Messiah, in whose Name the power of their almighty God Jehovah resided!

31. See, the word of such a man gave out something because it worked outwardly and My Divine Spirit worked inwardly, hence this enthusiasm for faith - because it flowed from the power of God of My Spirit, hence this death-defying courage to stand up for the truth because the reward was the return of the child as a hero for the cause of My House. This formed heroes, even lions of courage and strength, out of weak people, tender youths and virgins, as well as adults and old people, the most terrible of cruel tortures and not to fear death, but to joyfully lay down their lives for faith. If you look with such thoughts at the Original Christian movement and its rapid expansion, then the truth will rise to you as a light from on high and enlighten the whole of your being so that you will think as a man thinks in whom the spirit of My Divine 'I' shines as the central light of all life and radiates to truth and to love for Him who is your God and Father and speaks these words of love and truth to you. Amen.

32. So you see that almost every account in the history of suffering was prophesied by the prophets in advance, and that is sufficient proof for you that I, Christ, was God Myself, because of no other man in the world can it be said that his life story was foretold hundreds and thousands of years in advance and that in all details. The prophecies about Me, Jesus, made before, should be well considered by logically thinking people before they speak, so that they do not get rebuked afterwards - by the incorrectness of their accusations; for the greater the struggle against Christ, the greater evidence against the adversaries will be brought to light at the right time!

*

38.6 Prophecy of the Resurrection

33. King David prophecies in 1043 before Christ that I, Jehovah, will not leave My beloved to rot in the grave, (Psalm 16:9-10; Acts 2:27) Whom I called My beloved son in Mount Tabor (Matthew 17:1- 5; Mark 9:6; - Luke 9:35) In Matthew (12:40) I, Jesus, prophesied that I would lie in the tomb for three days, and in Mark, Luke (Luke 9:22; -13:31-33; - see also 24:46) and John (John 2:13-22) that I would rise from the dead on the third day.

34. Since the day of My resurrection from the dead, My body was no longer visible to the fleshly eyes of man, except when I opened the spiritual eyes of My disciples and believers. For at the resurrection, My Divine omnipotence transformed the flesh-body of Christ into the spiritual - henceforth invisible - cover of Divine Love and Wisdom, or of the Father and the Son in God, which shell therefore, from then on, the Spirit of Love in God inhabits with My soul, which is the Son or the Wisdom in God, because through My resurrection, the God who became man and Creator of the world returned into His Divine original Being, but with the difference that before that, no-one could see God in the absolute state.

35. But from this time on, in the Body of Christ, I let Myself be seen face to face with My beloved children, which gives the greatest pleasures of bliss to the elect.

*

38.7 Prophecies about the effects and consequences of the appearance of the Messiah

36. The prophet Daniel prophesies 543 years before Christ, that Jerusalem will be destroyed because of the murder of the Messiah, and that the Jewish slaughter and grain offering[129] will cease once and for all. (Daniel 9:24,26,27; Hebrews 9:12,15,22-28; -10:3-4,14,19)

37. Isaiah said that through Messiah, the Kingdom of God will come from the Jews to the Gentiles because the Jews will have rejected Him. (Isaiah 8:3,10,14; Matthew 21:43)

38. The same prophet said that the Messiah would be accepted by the Gentiles. (Isa 65:1)

39. Malachi (1:10) prophesied (compare this with John 4:24; Matthew 22:37-40; -7:12) that the sacrifice in the new covenant will consist only in love unto God and neighbour.

CHAPTER 39

PROVE THAT JESUS CHRIST IS THE CREATOR OF THE WORLD

1. The prophet Isaiah says, "It is Jehovah who gives life and the Spirit of life to all from the fullness of God." (Isa 42:5)

2. Paul says the same thing in Acts 17:25: "Christ Himself is the One who gives life and breath to all everywhere."

3. Matthew 11:27 - I, Jesus, said: All things have been handed over to Me by My Father. With this I, Jesus, wanted to say: all worlds, all creatures and all heavenly glory has been handed over to Me, the Wisdom of My Love; for no-one knows Me (the Divine Wisdom) except the Father, whose Son I am; and the One to whom I will reveal this.

4. Peter says in the letter to the Hebrews (2:7-10) - "Jehovah, You made Your Son a little while lower than the angels; You then crowned Him with glory and honour, and set Him over the works of Your hands; You made everything subject under His feet." We see Jesus crowned with glory and honour through the suffering of death, after which He went to death according to God's merciful purpose for all. For so it had to happen that He, for the sake of all things, and by Whom all things exist, Who would lead many children to glory and be the Author of their salvation, had to bring it about through suffering. (One can see from this that Peter knew as little about the cause of Christ's suffering as did Swedenborg (*"Love"* I, 53) and therefore came to the wrong conclusions).

5. Hebrews 1:2-3 - Peter says: God has spoken to us in these last days through the Son, whom He has made an heir over all things, through whom also He created the world; Who is the brightness of His glory and the image of His Being, and He bears all things with His powerful Word, and has brought about the cleansing of our sins (of the first covenant (Hebrews 1:2; - 9:15; Romans 3:25) by Himself; With this He sat down at the right hand of the Majesty of heaven.

6. Testimony of Paul in the letter to Colossians 1:15-17 - Jesus Christ is the image of the invisible God, the Firstborn before all creatures. For by Him all things were created that are in heaven and on earth, visible and invisible, whether thrones, or dominions, or principalities, or authorities; all things were created through Him and in relation to Him. And He is before all, and all is in Him.

CHAPTER 40

Jesus as God and man and his Glorification and Deification

1. The Spirit of God is the sea of flames of Divine Love, which represents or encompasses the whole etheric air of the universe. This spiritual love-flame is the Spirit of life in the universe, and is - according to His love-property - the basic power of creation, and because this basic power is the creating property in God, therefore it is called 'Father', because everything that a free being does, it does out of his love for the cause, which is the will of love for procreation, formation, or creation and production. This is why Love in God is called Spiritual Father, because it is the begetting power. 'Father' etymologically[130] meaning "witness" (explained thoroughly in the *Holy Trinity*). I, Jesus, called this Spirit My Father or My Love, because it was the life in Me.

2. The Wisdom of God is the soul of God and is called the Son of God in spiritual language, which is otherwise called the Word of God. This Word of God as the Wisdom of God is innate in Divine Love, that is why I, Jesus, am called the only begotten Son of God in My soul, because the Wisdom of God is innate in the Love of God, or in its content. (John 1:14,18; -3:16,18; -1:4,9; Isaiah 9:5) My - or Jesus' - soul is therefore an outpouring of Divine Light-rays from the Divine Love-flame, spiritually called 'Father'. These rays are the Divine Wisdom, and this is contained in the bodily form, which the Spirit chose according to His will and integrated into His own imagination. This imagination, as a spiritual product, is hence the soul of Jesus, which the Spirit of God Himself created for His own use. And this Spirit gave the soul the intelligence to build up the material body exactly according to its spiritual form in the womb.

*

40.1 Magnetism and electricity is like Love and Wisdom

3. Now I come to the basic explanation of in what the Divine Love and Wisdom lies.

4. The Love of God lies in the world-embracing magnetism, representing it - and that is why people are healed of diseases through the inflow of magnetism, because God's Love is life, therefore also health.

5. Magnetism - as Father or the Love in God - is, as already explained, the basic power of the all-creating will in God, and it is at the same time the ruling power in the universe, which makes electricity the soul of God, which means the Wisdom and Power in God. But magnetism is much greater and more powerful than electricity - therefore I, Jesus, as the soul of the Father, said: The Father is greater than I, but people have not yet understood what I meant by that, because it was only published through the book "*The Holy Trinity*". Christian-Theosophical books, however, have been far too little known and too little believed that they tell the truth.

6. Because magnetism and electricity are not separate in God, but one in the other, that is why I said at the last supper that I am in the Father and the Father is in Me, so I was also through My Wisdom, which at that time had already completely passed over into Love, otherwise I would not have been able to suffer and die on the cross for the sins of the world - one with Love; and Love, or the Father, was one with Wisdom, Who went wholly over into Love (1 John 10:30; -12:45; -14:9-11) So you have to understand My Divine words, then there will no longer be contradictions when reading such verses.

7. But just as magnetism is greater than electricity, so you see that magnetism is the basic fire and power in God. You see this basic fire through every fire in material appearance, but most strongly in underground fire, which manifests itself through volcanoes or fire-spitting mountains, who sometimes announce to people that they do not live according to My will; hence no minute of life is safe and therefore are to turn back and become better. But because most people do not believe what I tell you here, I am already swinging My rod of discipline strongly and will swing it with increasing strength over mankind that only pays homage to sin, not wanting to acknowledge that world-, nature and elementary events are My rod of discipline, or punishment of God!

8. Behold, there are two suns - one spiritual, which is called 'God dwelling in inaccessible light', and one material sun for the earthlings. But the material sun receives fire, light and heat from the spiritual sun, and is therefore the material representation of the spiritual sun, which is exactly I, your God and Father. The fire and the warmth represent the Love, but the radiating light represents the Wisdom in God, that is why I, Jesus, as the soul of God, said: "I am the light of the world", (John 8:12) as Wisdom and the teaching of Truth, (*Holy Trinity*, 1st ed. p. 34) because it comes from the Love and Wisdom of God. Without the sun as an emitter of love and wisdom or magnetism and electricity, the earth would be pitch black and devoid of all life and all motion; therefore, all good things must come from above, from your Father Jesus who cares for you and from nowhere else!

9. As said: The Wisdom of God is the spiritual electric light and is the soul of God, which is the infinity of the etheric space in itself. If a strong electric sun, as this light of electric light globes is called, emits such an intense bluish-white light that it appears as an inaccessible light, how strong must all the light of the soul of God be, since it is the infinity of the etheric space!? That is why it is said: "God dwells in inaccessible light", which is easy to understand, because the material electric light is the spiritual light that has entered into the visual material.

10. But this electric light that has entered into material appearance is at the same time a tiny proof of the infinitely high Wisdom of God, against which some people fight in their spiritual darkness. For in electricity lies the Wisdom and Power of God, hence the tremendous thunderbolts and impacts when the evil hellish spirits of the first hell in thunderstorm-days wage their spirit-wars in the cloud-region; because their souls, like Jesus' Divine soul, consist of electricity, thus also of tremendous power, which is thoroughly explained in the book of *The guidance of Dr. Martin Luther and Swedenborg in the hereafter*. This is also the origin of the terrible earthquakes, when the earth spirits are aroused who have their existence in the air and water.[131] But from this the administration of the Wisdom of God in nature and in spirit can be seen, because magnetism as Father or Love in God, and electricity as Wisdom and Power in God, rule the world. This is why it is said that the Holy Spirit proceeds from the Father and the Son, or from Love and Wisdom - because the Holy Spirit is nothing other than the working Power of what Love and Wisdom in God have decided to do.

11. Whoever can think clearly, will now easily understand and also see, understand and perceive his spiritual Father everywhere, because everything is from God and in God, and everything represents the Divine thoughts in different appearances of what man sees, hears or otherwise always perceives through his censorial instruments. In these visible thoughts however, the Holy Spirit is also represented in God, because their activity is what is called movement, growth or whatever else.

12. Can someone who has once understood that God is the Spirit of the etheric air, or the basic forces of magnetism and electricity that flow through the world and produce, maintain and govern everything, still doubt that God is everywhere - even in the smallest atom? Yes, not merely is, but He is the heart, the life in every atom, and so ascending to the greatest primal

central sun circling in the universe! Without God, nothing exists anywhere, and nothing can exist anywhere, because everything is in God and nothing but God.

13. He who cannot comprehend this truth, should consider himself as a child of God, whether not love, wisdom and the magneto-electric force exists in him through the impact of thought? Of course here appropriate to the human form - in God [it is] immeasurable, because everything is on an infinitely large scale.

*

40.2 The body of Jesus was spiritualized and Mary was no longer a mother

14. Through the incarnation I had to produce a material flesh-body for Myself in which I lived for thirty-three years. I had to spiritualize this body more and more through the mortification of all worldly things, therefore spiritualize it so that all hellish vices of the material body were destroyed. Through this spiritualization I got rid of more and more of the human, which I received through the mother, so that at the time of My 3 years of teaching, everything human had already left Me. I was now more an established spirit in the flesh-body, therefore the mother of My mother was no longer mother anymore, because I had already eliminated everything human from Me; I was a highest spirit as well as fleshly-bodily, and was therefore no longer her son, because nothing of her was in Me anymore. When one knows this, then one can understand My words and action towards My former mother because I no longer called her My mother in human terms, as the following Biblical passages prove:

I. Joh. 2:3,4 - At the wedding in Cana of Galilee, Mary said to Me, "They have no more wine," and I answered, "Woman, (*Vi (wi)* in original German means what *jan skr*. - "to create, to give birth", *ba* in *wiba* in original German is a feminine substantiation suffix, therefore *wiba urd. jani* in Sanskrit and in žeua slavic means: "to produce, to give birth") what do I have to do with you? My hour has not yet come." (to reveal Myself)

II. Luke 8:20,21 - When I once came near Nazareth during My teaching time, and Mary visited Me with Joseph's sons, I was told during the talk that My mother had come with My brothers to see Me. Then I answered the listeners by extending out My hand to My disciples and saying; My mother and My brothers are they who hear and obey the Word of God. (This is also related in Matt 12:46-49 and Mark 3:31-35)

III. John 19:26,27 - At the time of My crucifixion, Mary and the disciple John stood under the cross and I said to Mary: "Woman, behold your son; then I said to John: "Behold your mother." So I no longer called Mary My mother, since I had separated from Me all human things that came from her; John remarks: "and from that hour he (John) took her to himself". This news is indeed correct, but Mary did not stay with John for long, but she went back to Joseph's house, so the story is to be regarded as correct, as in the *Announcements* in *Vol. I*, p. 59.

IV. John chapter 20: Likewise you see from the resurrection scene that I appeared first to Mary Magdalene and not to My mother Mary.

15. These proofs should be enough for you to place the mother of My body no higher than one of the high spirits of My children's heaven, since I Myself announced already in My life[time] that Mary was not higher than any other person. However, I recognize her as My physical mother, but by no means as holy, Mother of God and Queen of Heaven - what the Roman Church has made of her - because these words mean in a spiritual sense that I, God, still had a Father as

an Old God, who had begotten Me as God with Mary; 'holy' means as co-God, because in the Kingdom of Spirits, no-one is holy but I, Jesus, alone; and Queen of Heaven means that Mary is the wife or spouse of the Old God who would be My Father. Such pagan anti-Christian teaching about God and Mary can only be a bait for the ignorant; for Me, Jesus, it is an abomination.

*

40.3 The spiritual essentiality of Mary

16. That you may know what kind of Queen of Heaven and Mother of God Mary is, I will tell you the truth of Jesus' revelation: Mary is now the wife of an archangel, whose name is Joseph, but not the foster father Joseph. With this young man she lives in the circle of very high spirits, who are on a par with her in their purity of heart and love for Jesus. For in heaven there are no virgins who are alone and without a husband, but every virgin or non-virgin gets a husband with whom she lives in conjugal spiritual chastity, because husband and wife form one man, even if they are two persons:[133] therefore Paul said: The man is the head of the woman and God took the woman out of him as part of Adam and set her up for him as his second self and did not create her from scratch as a new man.

17. But the doctrine of chaste heavenly virgins, who are brides of Jesus, you have to accept as that the spirit of God is male, but the souls of people are all female, and that in every soul there is an equal spirit from God, Who is His brother and the same as Jesus, Who has every soul as His bride, because in every soul there is a spark of the Spirit of God; because this Spirit is life, is love and everything in man, because It is its leader through eternities, until man becomes what Jesus is: a god beside Jesus as God the Father, but Jesus always remains the Father and has all power in His hands and everything what such a god who follows Jesus will want to create in millions of years, he will only be able to do in union with Jesus' power and his will to love, but never out of his own full power.[134]

18. Through the removal of everything human, Jesus is not the son of David either, as the following scene from His teaching years teaches:

> Matt 22:41-46 - Jesus asked the Pharisees and said: “What do you think of Christ? Whose son is He?” They answered Him: “Christ is the son of David.” And Jesus answered them: “How then does David call Him his Lord in the Spirit when he says, 'Jehovah said to my Lord: 'Sit at My right hand until I have laid your enemies on the footstool of your feet.' Now if David calls Him his Lord, how is He then His son?” And nobody could give Jesus an answer. (this is also written in Mark 12:35-37; Luke 20:41-44; Psalm 110:1)

19. From this can be seen that through the removal and elimination of all human things from Mary, I, Jesus, also eliminated everything from David; for I only received the flesh-body from Mary, but without the spiritual ingredient of the mother's spirit, in which the spirit of David was represented, otherwise I would have to re-incorporate the spirit of David into Mary or keep it and deify it, but this would not work, because people themselves have to deify their soul-spirit parts from their ancestors.

20. But one thing has happened - I, Jesus, am spirit-Divinely the King David Himself, because I, Jesus, as his God and Creator and eternal King for and in his ancestral family, fathered and gave birth to Myself, that is why it is said that the king's throne of David will be eternally confirmed - will exist - but in Me, but not in the person of the former King David, about which I will speak again.

*

40.4 About Transfiguration

21. That My human body at the time of My teaching years was already highly spiritualized, even almost completely deified, is testified to you by the Tabor-scene in the presence of the disciples John, Jacob and Peter. There the transfiguration of My 'I' happened, how I looked spiritually by opening the spiritual vision to the disciples, that they could see and contemplate Me in My Divine glory, about which the evangelists tell you the following: "His face shone like the sun and His garments were like light and they heard a voice from the cloud (which voice was of Myself) saying, 'This is My beloved Son in whom I am well pleased'." (Matt 17:1-8; Mark 9:2-8; Luke 9:28-36).

22. I appeared a second time to John when he wrote the Revelation - transfigured, with My face shining like the sun. (Rev 1:16)

23. There are, however, still other moments in which I spoke of the transfiguration without anyone noticing it - for example at the entry into Jerusalem, where they began to argue with Me in the temple, because I did not let Myself be anointed and proclaimed king. In My sadness at the wrong views of the kingmakers about My earthly mission, I cried out loud: "Father, glorify thy name!" Whereupon I let the voice come as if from heaven, which spoke: "I have glorified It and will glorify It again." (John 12:23-28).

24. The question is: what and how did this transfiguration happen? It was spiritual, namely: I cut off the royal dignity and with that I glorified the Divine; and that was the transfiguration.

25. The next Transfiguration was at the Last Supper, when Judas stood up and betrayed Me to the High Priest Caiaphas. When Judas had gone out, I said, "Now the Son of Man is glorified and God is glorified in Him, and God in Himself will also glorify Him and will immediately glorify Him". (John 13:31,32; -17:1-6) The meaning of this transfiguration is the following: I could have escaped suffering and shame, but this was the glorification, because I did not withdraw, but surrendered Myself for the sin of the world and went to the Mount of Olives, where I let Myself be captured to carry out the redemption from original sin. The story of suffering and death was My main glorification and thus total deification, since I as a human being suffered and died for all mankind.

26. Therefore I told the two disciples on the way to Emmaus: “Did not Christ have to suffer these things and enter His glory?” (as God - Luke 24:26) See, with the suppression of all humanity, with suffering and shame, I have deified the human flesh-body in 21 years (i. e. from 12 to 33 years), for which all humans will usually need almost innumerable years until he will follow Me, His Father, because he must become crystal clear in everything.

27. That My earthly flesh-body has completely spiritualized itself through My suffering, is proven in the resurrection at 3 o'clock in the morning on March 27th of the year 33,[135] when My Divine Spirit came to take the flesh-body and unite it with Me - this immediately changed into spirit (story of suffering), and from this hour on, no man has seen Me in any other way as when I opened his spiritual eyes. Therefore I immediately disappeared in Emmaus from before the disciples as soon as they recognized Me, because I closed their spiritual eyes. (Luke 24:31)

28. Then when the two disciples came back to the Mount of Olives to Lazarus where the disciples had been hiding and had told the story of the incident on the way to Emmaus at the breaking of the bread, I suddenly entered at the closed door, which shocked them all, because they at first took Me for a ghost. I immediately took away their fear by showing them that it is I by My pierced hands and feet and said to them: "Reach out and examine Me, for a spirit has no flesh and bones, as you see that I have." (Luke 24:39,40; John 20:20) I of course had to

materialize My spiritual body through Divine willpower for the time I stayed with them. But as they for joy could not really believe it and thought it to be a delusion of their senses, I said to them: Do you have anything to eat here? Whereupon they gave Me a piece of fried fish and some honeycomb. I took it and ate it in front of them. (Luke 24:46-48; John 20:19-26)

29. I came after 8 days in like manner through the closed door and convinced the unbelieving Thomas that I actually rose from the dead, whereupon Thomas exclaimed: "My Lord and My God!" He publicly confessed that only God can rise from the dead by His own power.[136] (John 20:26-28)

*

40.5 About the Ascension

30. The ascension also testifies of My Divinity, where I ascended in the presence of 670 people to whom I first gave a speech because they were My friends and believers, and then a white cloud descended from the firmament, enveloped Me and ascended again, disappearing from this earth before their eyes (Luke 24:51)

31. Nothing like this has ever happened on earth and in front of such a large number of people. (1 Cor 15:6) The question is: Could this be done in public if it had not been done in truth and before so many witnesses? Certainly not! And see, despite this decisive fact that such a thing would not have been believed if there were not witnesses of this result everywhere, the various false prophets still dare to assert that it did not happen, or interpret it so that God in Christ is always presented as a lie. Behold, God's antithesis, whom people otherwise call Satan, always does this - and whoever strays into his company is his servant and helper, wanting to weed Me out as God. But the time will soon come where the last Christ-eradicator in hell will examine his sins while My holy name will be recognized more and more and will be loved and worshipped everywhere as God and Father of man.

32. About My going home through death and through the ascension, I already prophesied at the last supper by saying to My disciples: "I went forth from the Father and entered the world; I am leaving the world again and go to the Father." (John 16:28) But not only at the Last Supper, but I often spoke beforehand about My departure from this world and return to My Divine primeval Love-Being or back to the Father, as the following reports of the evangelist John show:

I. “I will stay with you for a little while, and then I go to Him who sent Me.” (John 7:33; -16:5,16; -17:11,13) But it was My love which sent Me to redeem the human race from the separation of the Father from the children.

II. After the speech at Capernaum about eating My flesh and drinking My blood, I told the grumbling disciples to make them think about My person: “How (will it be) when you see the Son of Man ascend to where He was before?” (John 6:62)

III. Another time I said: "No-one goes to heaven except He who came down from heaven, namely (I) the Son of Man (or the preacher of the Divine Word), Who (in His Divine nature always) is in heaven." (John 3:13)

33. These sayings during My life - compared with the wisdom and love contained in the words of My Divine teaching proclaiming the eternal truth, show you that I - Who spoke doctrines so impeccable because they are at the height of human reason[137] - prophesied certainly also in these words the highest truth; even if also today, in the era of dark false prophethood, many people do not understand My spiritual words, because they do not receive words brought from heaven - and pull them, together with Christ, into their spiritual darkness - into the dung of their

intellectual wisdom.

*

40.6 Christ as the Image of God

34. Now we want to talk about the importance of Christ as the image of God. You see, the image of God is the same Being in the spiritual sense as God the Father, and is therefore endowed with the same virtues and qualities as God Himself, and that I, Christ, was it, the following Bible-verses say:

35. The unbelievers for whom the god of this world (who is selfishness) has blinded the mind, they do not see the bright light of the gospel of the clarity of Christ, Who is the image of God." (2 Cor 4:4)

36. A **second verse** reads: "Those whom Jehovah saw, called and chose before, He also made glorious, that they should be like the image of His Son, Who is the firstborn from among many brethren. (Rom 8:29,30)

37. This **third verse** describes the sublimity of Christ among His children, who form His spiritual kingdom: "Give thanks to the Father who has made us able to be heirs of the blessed in the light; He who saved us from the authorities of darkness and placed us in the kingdom of His dear Son, in Whom we have redemption through His blood, the forgiveness of sins (of the first covenant), (Genesis 3:15; Romans 3:25; Hebrews 9:15) Who is the image of the invisible God, the firstborn before all creatures. (Col 1:15)

38. In the **fourth place** it is stressed that through Christ, because He is the wisdom and power of God, the worlds were created. "Jehovah has spoken to us in these last days through the Son, whom He has made an heir over all, through whom He has created the worlds; who is the glory of His glory (the light or holiness of God), and the image of His Divine Being." (Heb 1:2,3) Paul expresses himself even more gloriously in Colossians that through Christ all that exists was created, (Colossians 1:15) which is certainly the strongest proof that I, Jesus Christ, God the Father and Creator of the world, are one and the same Person.

CHAPTER 41

Jesus, the Eternal

1. That I, Jesus, am not temporal, but from eternity, is proved by several scriptural passages of Holy Scripture, which glorify Me as the Eternal, therefore without beginning or end. This fact is already clearly proven from the preceding proofs, that is why I only want to give you here those passages further confirming what has already been proven:

I. John 1:27,30 - John the baptist testified about Me: "It is He (that is, Messiah) who will come after me, Who was before me, Whose bootlace I am not worthy to undo." [30] This is he of whom I said: 'After me comes a man Who was before me: for He was before me.' The prophet Micah says of Me:

II. Micah 5:1 - "You Bethlehem Ephratha,[138] (Ephratha was the old name of Bethlehem) you are small among the thousands (of places in Judah indeed), but from you a ruler of Israel will come forth for Me, whose origin is from the prehistoric times, from the days of eternity". This clear prophecy teaches you that I, God the Eternal Ruler and King Myself, would be born in human form of the Messiah in Bethlehem, and actually became God, 700 years later.

III. John 1:1-3,14 - This evangelist says that I, the Word or the Wisdom of God was already in God as His Wisdom in the primordial foundation of the cause and that this Wisdom of God was accepted and became flesh in Jesus, then dwelt among men and showed Me in Divine glory at Mount Tabor.

IV. John 8:58 - In a dispute I had with the Jews in the temple, I told them, "Truly, truly, I say to you, before Abraham was, I was."

V. John 16:28 - At the last supper I said that I went out from God the Father and would return to Him. And there I said:

VI. John 17:5,24 - "Now Father, glorify Me with You with the glory that I had with You even before the world was founded."

VII. Revelation 11:5 - Revelation describes the world-events at the time of the dark false prophethood that falls into our days, and that the victory will finally fall to God.

2. The words are: "The world government has fallen to our Lord and to His Christ (who is the bearer of the Father); He will reign (in Christ) from eternity to eternity." Such clear statements about Me, teach you clearly enough that I, Jesus Christ, am God Myself. See, when you get the smallest note of a historical existence about a so far unknown famous personality from the past, you sound the trumpet and believe in the former existence of this Person. But a whole thick book speaks of Me, the whole great Holy Scripture in thousands and thousands of verses, because it has Me, Jesus Christ Jehovah of hosts as the object of its historiography, and yet you do not believe it! When one would understand to read this book of the secrets of God spiritually and heavenly, then one would not deny My existence and the truth of the facts! Does not this show clearly and distinctly the spirit in which My derogators, slanderers, accusers, deniers, blasphemers and eradicators are!

3. May My adversaries do what they want: I am the Alpha and the Omega, the beginning and the end; for I am He Who was and He Who will come, the Almighty. (Rev 1:8,11) A Lord of lords

and King of kings of the world. (Revelation 17:14; -19:16) The reasoning about the Holy Trinity, that I am Father, Son and Holy Spirit in one person and I am Jesus Myself, can be read in the book *The Holy Trinity*. The book: *Christ, His coming and return*,[139] brings further justifications about My person: Apart from these books, all Christian-Theosophical books contain explanations about Me and the relationship between Me and My children.

4. In these available proofs from the prophets and from My own prophecies in the reports by the evangelists, it is shown that I, Jesus Christ, was prophesied in advance by all great prophets of the old covenant - how, when, where and for what reason I will come, and these prophecies have all been literally fulfilled in My person, "Jesus of Nazareth". There is not a single prophecy among them which would be set up as a supposition, about which everyone can self-check by the cited source-references, but every prophecy has been pronounced apodictically[140] or irrefutably conclusive and has also been irrefutably fulfilled, for which the facts speak through the historical records of Jews, Christians and Gentiles of the Roman Empire mentioned above.

5. The second, as the conclusion to this proof, is taken from the prophecies of the Old and New Testaments, which all flowed from God through prophets and apostles, or have been recorded. [They] clarify who I, Jesus Christ, according to My human person actually was, and how one should correctly interpret the spiritual language of the correspondences in the Bible, which can only happen through the direct revelation of God, who alone can interpret them correctly, since He let them be written for the salvation and not for the harm of the soul.

CHAPTER 42

JESUS, THE KING AND JUDGE OF THE WORLD

1. Many passages of the Bible speak of Me as being a king and judge of people as My children. The Old Testament only needs to be read with calmness and deliberation, and you will always find that I as God and Lord of the world, speak in it. To prove what has already been mentioned and proven here, I add the following passages, which testify to this:

I. Isaiah 22:23,24 - "I, Jehovah, want to lay the keys of the house of David on His shoulder" (comp. Isaiah 7:14; -9:5) - i.e. I want to make Him ruler, king of the world in a spiritual sense - "that all the glory of His Father's house may be attached to Him." (i.e. that He may be called the ruling God)

*

42.1 CHRIST IS THE LORD OF HEAVEN AND EARTH

2. John 3:35 - I said of Myself: "The Father loves the Son and has given everything to Him. By which it is said that I am the Lord and Ruler of the world, because the world is ruled by the Love and Wisdom of God that are in Me.

3. Matthew 28:18-20 - I said on the day of My ascension: "All authority in heaven and on earth has been given to Me. Therefore, go and teach all nations (My gospel) and baptize them in the name of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Spirit." But these words do not mean a baptism in water, but are spoken and mean completely spiritually: **Initiate them into the Love of the Father, into the teaching of the Son and into the faith of the Holy Spirit**; because you are to be like your Father in heaven and this is love (John 4:8,16); you are to know My teaching what has been taught to you and you are to firmly believe this teaching - that it is true - and therefore you are to live and act accordingly by doing everything what I have taught you. That is why I continued telling the apostles: "And teach them to keep all that I have commanded you."

4. John 5:22-24 - When the Jews came after Me to kill Me, I spoke to them: "The Father judges no-one, but He has given all judgement to the Son, that all may honour the Son as they honour the Father. He that honours not the Son honours not the Father, Who sent Him. Verily, verily, I say to you: He who hears My word and believes Him who sent Me, has eternal life and does not come to judgement, but has passed from death to life. This means: Love in God judges no-one, but has given all the judgement to Wisdom in God (which is Christ), so that all may acknowledge God in Christ. So the one who does not acknowledge the Wisdom of God does not acknowledge the love of God, Who sent His wisdom to the world in the body of Christ. But who believes this Wisdom and lives and acts according to My teaching, becomes My child and comes to Me into heaven, into the life of love and joys.

CHAPTER 43

JUSTIFICATION BEFORE GOD

Zurich, 20 July - 1 August, 1904

1. The Protestant teachers of religion claim: Christian Theosophy makes the salvation of the soul from death dependent on the works of faith, and these works should be perfect, instead of discerning:

I. One is saved on the principle of faith in the principle of faith in the substitutionary sacrifice of Jesus, without works.

II. For the Lord has accomplished the work by His suffering and death on the cross for our sins.

III. The works are not the foundation, but the fruit of faith and are rewarded as such.

IV. He who believes is righteous because he acknowledges that as a sinner he deserves punishment and death, and should thank the Lord Jesus that He died for him. (sic! sic!)[141]

V. The sacrifice of Jesus Christ is not only for original sin, but also for the present voluntarily committed sins and its guilt.

VI. The blood of Jesus Christ cleanses us from all sin, not only because it corresponds to and expresses the revealed love of God,

VII. but because the soul is contained in it

VIII. Christ has poured out (therefore shed!) His soul into death for us;

IX. The blood atones through the soul it contains.

2. When Adam and Eve sinned, I, Jehovah, promised a Saviour (in Messiah), Who will come from Zion. (Gen 3:15; Isa 59:20)

3. This promise, that I will come because of the original sin which Adam and Eve, and which you also - as descendants from the spirit of Adam and Eve - have committed, already declares why I, Jesus, suffered and died. But nowhere does it say that the Savior (in Messiah) will also suffer for the sins of the New Testament or the Second Covenant. Paul - and after him *Luther* - therefore committed a great error in the doctrine of justification, which is thoroughly explained and illuminated in the Luther book. But what Paul erred in the Epistle to the Galatians, he made up for in the Epistle to the Romans, as follows:

4. In Romans 3:25, Paul writes: "God has appointed Him as a sacrifice of atonement, through faith in His blood, to give proof of His righteousness in the remission of past transgressions." Unfortunately, the Lutheran Bible in this verse is much more incomprehensible than the Roman Bible. That the meaning of the Roman Bible is more correct than the Lutheran one, however, can be seen from the Epistle of Peter to Hebrews 9:15.

5. To understand the meaning of the mystical verse in the Epistle to the Romans, read it with

the clarifications inserted: "He (*Jesus Christ*) was destined by God (*His love*) to be the atoning sacrifice (f*or the original sin and the sins arising from it*) until the death by crucifixion (*according to the Father Jesus*) of the faith (*which Jehovah awakened in them through the prophecies of the incoming Savior in Messiah*) in His blood (*which spiritually means the love of God for His children*) to give a proof of His righteousness (*against the descendants of Adam, who in later incarnations knew nothing of the former sin that they had committed [in Adam]*) in the remission of former transgressions (*through the sin offering on the cross to justify original sin*).

6. Already the designation "remission of former sins" proves that these are sins from the past, committed before death on the cross. But this is particularly clear from the Epistle to the Hebrews, which Peter wrote from Arimathea in the year 48, where it says (Heb 9:15)

7. Christ is therefore the mediator of a New Testament (Second Covenant), so that through death, salvation from the transgressions of the First Testament may be obtained, those who are called to receive the promised eternal inheritance.

8. This is clearly stated that the sins of the New Testament or the Second Covenant are not meant by this. A thorough explanation of this can be read in the book *"The guidance of Luther and Swedenborg"*, where the five-fold mediation of Christ is also illuminated. This is the salvation of the souls of the Lutherans, so read the *Luther* Book! But also the Romans [Catholics] will learn a lot of new things in it.

9. Isaiah 43:25 says: I, Jehovah, blot out your transgressions for My sake." (2 Corinthians 5:18-19) that is, to redeem My children from original sin, and do not remember your sins. (of the Old Testament - Genesis 3:15; Romans 3:25; Hebrews 9:15.)

10. Furthermore, I speak through Isaiah 44:22-23: "I, Jehovah, will destroy your iniquities like a cloud, and your sins like the mist. Turn to Me, for I will redeem you." (Therefore: Rejoice ye heavens, because Jehovah (your Father) hath done it, and rejoice ye men from the depth of the earth (because of the greatness of this deed)). Note the fact that it is always I, Jehovah, or God the Father, who speaks in person that I do and will do it, rather than saying, 'My Son will do it'. I, Jesus, was Jehovah Himself as the primordial Light of all light, and the primordial Force of all action, and My infinite Wisdom, called "Son of God" in heavenly correspondence, as the soul of God the Father, was the one who brought it about.

11. The evangelist John (I John 1:5-8) writes: "This is the proclamation that we have heard from Him (*Jesus*), proclaiming to you that God is light (*or pure as crystal*), and in Him there is no darkness (*or sin*). If we say that we have fellowship with Him, and walk in darkness (*or sin*), we lie, and tell not the truth." But so we are in the light (*or without sins, without vices, without committing the lusts of the flesh, without evil idiosyncrasies and passions, without any selfishness and self-love in the highest love for God and in the completely unselfish highest love for neighbour, like God for man, or mother for her children, full of humility like Jesus on the path of suffering*), full of patience, full of mercy towards friend and foe (*like God, who sends the sunshine and renewing, fertilizing rain on sinners and the righteous with equal love*), full of love of peace, full of serious chastity, purity, reconciliation, walk in forgiveness and selflessness, as God is in the (*here described spiritual*) light, so we have fellowship with one another (*as in Original Christianity; everywhere mine was yours and yours was mine*) and (*then*) the blood of Jesus Christ (*which is the selfless, therefore the pure-spiritual, Divine Love of Christ for us His children*) cleanses us from all sin (explained precisely so at the request of the Father Jesus). But if we say that we have no sins and that they are Christ's for us in the New Testament, which we commit today, with His blood shed on the cross, we deceive and mislead ourselves, and the truth is not in us. (but a self-made lie, because the prophets and apostles taught against it, as the cited proofs show) (Explained precisely so at the request of the Father Jesus)

12. And John explains it further and says: I John 2:1-4 - “My children, I write these things to you that you may not sin. And if anyone sins, we have an intercessor with the Father, Jesus Christ, who is righteous. And this is the atonement for our sins; not only for our own, but also for those of the whole world. And by this we know that we know Him, if we keep His commandments. He that saith, I know Him, and keeps not His commandments, the same is a liar, and in such is no truth.”

13. These four verses teach you that when you sin, I am your Advocate with the Father, since I am the atonement for your sins, and at the same time that when you do not keep My commandments, you are liars and thus sinners. If you judge these verses with a little understanding, you see for yourselves that it is first and foremost a matter of not committing sins; everything else is taught to you in the enlightenment which now follows. Paul said: "Believe in the Lord Jesus Christ and you will be saved." (Acts 16:31) And from this most people conclude that faith alone makes you blessed!

14. My dear children! I ask you: Have I not said: "I have not come to abolish Moses and the prophets (i.e. the laws), but to fulfill them"? If you want to become My children, you too will fulfill the Ten Commandments! I taught: "Watch and pray, for the spirit is willing but the flesh is weak." I have never said: By faith alone you will be saved, but I have taught the people for three years what they must do to be saved. **Not faith alone, but the strict observance of the 10 Commandments, the teachings I have left you, according to which you are to live and act, as well as praying without ceasing and fulfilling the greatest commandment in the law: "Love God above all things; but your neighbour as yourself" is what makes you blessed**. For your sins committed today I have not shed a drop of blood, but only for the sins of the Old Testament: for the original sin committed in the spirit of Adam and for the sins resulting from it, until the time of the crucifixion. This is why I have taught you the Lord's Prayer for the New Testament so that you may know that you are sinners and that you should ask and pray for the forgiveness of sins daily. So this is the faith that I have left you. You make faith the only thing, but it is just like the infallible pope, like the Romans who believe the worthless confession; wherein man does not actively change in his customs, habits and life. Both are equally worthless before Me, your God.

15. Paul was a man, and indeed a sinful man, as he himself confessed - how then can you insist that Paul and Luther were infallible, when there are many contradictions against My teaching! Read the excerpts from the *Luther* writings in the *Luther* Book to see your great error! I, as God in the flesh, denied the infallibility of man Myself, saying, "No-one is good (that is, infallible) but God alone." Therefore, I repeat: Read the 'justification before God' in the *Luther* Book to know that you yourselves must expiate your sins, otherwise you will go to hell without mercy! One invokes My mediation ministry, which is misunderstood by you, (The thorough explanation about the five-fold mediation ministry of Christ can be read in the *Luther* Book) through which one becomes "by grace righteous and blessed" before Me. (Ephes 2:5) Oh you uncircumcised in mind and heart! You lack nothing else than the completely misleading assurance by Paul, that I will make the godless righteous by grace (Romans 4:5) to form out of harlots, adulterers, thieves, murderers, deceivers, robber-murderers and all kinds of other hellish rabble, the true hell as your supposed heaven. After all do not dream of heaven, because the opposite of what you expect comes when you do not believe what I, Jesus, tell you here.

16. Who does not believe Me here, he declares Me a liar, and you do not need more to hold together your self-made soap bubbles from this false doctrine - where then of course when you die in sins, the deep spiritual darkness of hell is inevitable. He who has ears, let him hear while there is still time.

*

43.1 The Works of Neighbourly Love

17. That the works are not the foundation but only the fruit of faith and therefore are rewarded is the complete misunderstanding of My Divine teaching. Have I not said: Love God with all your heart, with all your soul and with all your mind and that this is the noblest and greatest commandment? And that the other commandment - Love your neighbour as yourself - is therefore equal to the first? (Matt 22:37,40)

18. If you are hungry, thirsty, cold, torn apart or have some other need where your neighbour could help you but you cannot help yourself, what else is your desire but to be helped by your neighbour who can help you. Now that this is an irrefutable truth, should not My teaching of the works of charity: "Do to your neighbour what you wish your neighbour to do to you" be based on truth?
19. Since the contradiction against the teaching of love of neighbour and justification before God was raised against the book dictated by Myself: *The Guidance of Dr. M. Luther and Swedenborg in the Hereafter* from the Protestant side, and the book was declared heretical and coming from Satan, therefore I still have to present to you My highest truth and ask the full question: Is the verse: "Whatever you did to the least of My brothers who are just men, you did to Myself", also not from Me? Yes, according to your statement it is certain that all the cited and supreme teachings of the New Testament on the love of God and neighbour are heretical, even highly heretical; for you twist, cripple and deform them completely and declare them to be lies by not exalting My Jesus-teachings, but your self-made human statutes and preach them to the people as truth. Through this false teaching of yours from the wrongly interpreted Bible, you make the Bible a book of false prophecy. And as you, on the basis of your false prophethood, declare the Christian Theosophical books dictated by Me, Jesus, Myself, to be heretical and dictated by Satan himself, you thereby declare Me, your God and Father in Jesus, to be a heretic, false prophet and Satan, the prince of lies! For I, God and My Word are One.

20. Nobody who is from the truth - and examines these books for the truth - which is Love and Wisdom in God - and these incomparably beautiful teachings, which only preach everything according to My 7 Jesus-virtues as a Son of Man, reads and tests it in love and humility to Me, His Saviour of Calvary – will test it and read in it the high Divine character of the teaching developed in it, with nothing but love and gratitude to Me and often with tears in the eyes, because My Holy Spirit and the Spirit of My love flows through it. But who is not out of the truth, slanders it, [calls it] heretical, demonizes and persecutes My words contained in it to the ruin of the salvation of the soul! Do you not know what John the Evangelist said about the Word of God? If you were of the truth, you would know that the Word of God is God or Christ Himself! And since you treat it so meanly, hear what I, Jesus Christ, have decided about you as the first and the tepid!

21. Do you know the prophecy about Jerusalem? There the Pharisees and Temple-Jews also raged against Me like the pastors, teachers of religion and leading Protestants do today against My Christian Theosophical books! Therefore also you Bible-Christians, hear My prophecy against you!

*

43.2 Prophecy to Protestants and Biblical Christians

Zurich, 22 July, 1904

22. The Holy Scripture is a book of Divine prophecies, teachings and commandments. But it is misunderstood in many ways because it is misinterpreted. Therefore, in the near future, it will disappear completely from the world for three years, so that the defiance[142] of the Bible-Christians against My holy Word in Christian Theosophy - through which they criticize, hereticize and blaspheme Me - will receive its due restoration of honour, so that then no-one can say any more: 'I did not know that I misinterpreted the Biblical word, and that the true Word of God is contained in Christian Theosophy.' Who, despite this miracle of the world, which came true at the right time, will still insist on the old interpretation of the Bible and will not take into account the new interpretation which I, Jesus Myself, will give in the new Bible, will - after passing away from earth, enter into the darkness of the second hell until he is healed of his stubbornness and will accept what I explain as to be right and salutary for all. Thereby will this terrible denigration of My words in Christian Theosophy stop, because human obstinacy will not force Me to give in to their will according to their self-made dogmas out of the wrongful interpretation of the Bible.

23. It is indeed not pleasant to listen to Me being crucified everywhere: the Bible-Christian crucifies Me through his self-made false prophecy from the wrongly interpreted Bible according to his dead Bible-letter, who is his Pope, and does not want to hear about anything but what he has taken from the Bible.

24. The Roman Catholic crucifies Me by placing the Pope, Bishop and all priestly judicial officers above My Words, which - being [declared] heretical - are strictly forbidden to be read. Critics, deniers of God, Christ-eradicators, and various other believers and unbelievers seek nothing more than to interpret the Divine word as it suits them to be able to live in ease, obscenity, or Godlessness. These crucify Me by arbitrarily spoiling everything I have planned for them and making themselves unhappy - which is against My will, because I love all children equally and want to make all happy and lead them to Me. Amen.

25. Compare the *Luther* book, the magazine '*die Liebe*' 1, 16 [The Love] and the dictation of 14 October 1901 in the 9th *Arc of Love*.

CHAPTER 44

Teachings about Blood and Soul

1. 3 Moses 17:11 - The life of the body is in the blood, and I (Jehovah in Jesus) have put it on the altar for you to reconcile your souls with it. For the blood is the reconciliation, because the life is in it. (Vulgate): For the blood reconciles life.

2. 5 Moses 12:23 - “Only know that you shall not eat the blood: for the blood is the soul, therefore thou shalt not eat the soul with the flesh.” (Vulgate): “Only hold fast that you do not eat the blood, for the blood itself is the life, and you must not eat this life with the flesh.”

3. Enlightenment: That there is life in the blood of the body is based on truth, because the soul works mainly with the blood, it lives with its thoughts in the blood, because it is a matter of strengthening the flesh out of the blood through its intelligence and willpower and forming it into a solid mass, and to recreate it anew continually, because the old one wears out and disappears continually. The blood is thus the tool and material of the soul, since it steers it in all directions: To warm the stomach that it boils; to help where the powers weaken and decrease, such as the head, feet, hands, and hence to form the flesh.

4. But the blood *is* not the soul, for then it should never rot, but spiritualize itself, i.e. become invisible and go to hell or heaven after the death of the body. The life in the blood, which is wrongly called 'soul' in the Greek Lutheran Bible, is the fine spiritual, or spiritual complement of the blood and this is affected or fully imitated by the characteristics of the soul's mind according to its inclinations and characteristics, that this spiritual complement or extension of the material has in itself the same good or evil qualities as the temperamental character of the soul itself. I therefore forbade through Moses to eat the blood so that people would not be overcome by the animal nature of the slaughtered animal. It is true that the animal-spiritual is also present in the flesh, but not so strongly. That is why I have only reluctantly allowed the Israelites to eat meat. So the wrong view is that the blood is the soul itself. Blood is indeed the life in man, but only in such a way as is explained here, namely the material life, which is enlivened by My Divine Spirit through the soul and nothing else - every reasonably judging person should understand that.

5. Because the misunderstood teaching of Moses, which - as you can see above - produced a false teaching that the soul is in the blood and the blood itself is the soul, and which so impressed Dowie of Chicago[143] that - according to the materially understood words of the Bible - he created a new false teaching according to which the body dies together with the soul and only the expressed inclinations and qualities or virtues and vices of the soul - which form the human spirit or character of mind in man as opposed to the spirit of God* - survive after the death of body and soul,[144] I want to make the matter clear to you as also Protestant teachers misunderstand the same teaching as you see above:

6. Just as the blood is stirred up by love or by anger and thereby produces an expression of life, thus also are reconciled - according to Moses - who taught "tooth for tooth, eye for eye, blood for blood or life for life," the blood reconciles the vengeful soul. But in the New Testament did I, Jesus Myself, reveal to you the true way of reconciliation as I want to see it done by teaching: if the brother strikes you on one cheek, turn the other cheek to him so that he may be reconciled with you, seeing that you want to give him satisfaction, that is according to My Divine words: if your brother makes an unreasonable demand on you, grant it to him if you can and rather give him more and good words of reconciliation. (reconciliation through material violence is not meant in My Words, since this does not aim at love, but at raw satisfaction, which easily turns

out differently than what was intended) Thus, through your blood, which means "love" according to My teachings of the Holy Scriptures [meant] to be interpreted spiritually, you have reconciled the revenge-seeking wisdom of the soul and won the brother as a friend.

7. This is My Divine teaching of reconciliation through the blood. Because the blood means in heavenly correspondence "love" for Me and for every human as My child. Therefore the blood of Jesus Christ, which cleanses mankind from all sins (John 1-7), is the love that is discussed, which strives for reconciliation and is seen by Me as the justification according to My teaching. Think a little bit about whether the same thing is not demanded of you? Will you not be justified by the reconciliation and loving action of your offender or injuring party? So also think of Me because I am after all your spiritual Father, My Spirit dwells in you and you are My children - shall not the spiritual kinship with Me exist in you!? But that the material blood on the cross was shed only for the Old Testament sins, has been clearly explained to you above.

8. The forgiveness of sins and justification before Me is only understood through love in the indicated way and not differently. If you do not do this as I taught, then the Judge of the Lord's Prayer will appear and say: "As you act against Me and My children as your neighbours, so I, Jesus, act against you - for it is clearly stated there: 'Forgive us, then, as we forgive our neighbours!'

CHAPTER 45

The Gospel of Love

Zurich, 21 July, 1904

1. Many people are offended by this when they hear that in Christian Theosophy, so much is said about love - it does not suit them and they allow themselves to make ambiguous remarks about it. These remarks are derived from human carnal weakness, for which a proverb says: "As the prankster[145] is, so he thinks of others."

2. When people would lead a spiritual life, then they would think and judge spiritually and would therefore not be offended by My spiritual words in the dictations, which I dictate out of My spiritual original Being, which consists of pure love for My children, as a spiritual-moral teaching. Since I, God, am a spirit (John 4:24), one should not consider that I would teach you to love one another carnally!

3. Furthermore, in John 1:8,16 - "God is love", without any further explanation, is it spiritual or carnal love? When you think rationally, then you will know that I forbid all unchastity in the sixth commandment; it therefore has to be only a spiritual love!

4. So I demand in the greatest commandment of the law that you should love Me with all your heart, with all your soul and with all your mind, but love your neighbour as yourself. (Matt 22:37-40) How could you then take offense at My words when you would think and live pure and spiritually?

5. You should therefore rather take offense at yourselves, that you are so carnal and horny that you would take offense at Me because of My words! Look at the thirteenth chapter of the first letter to the Corinthians, where Paul speaks of love[146] in the fire of oratory zeal, that it is the highest, and take note that Paul never married - yes, he even renounced getting married in order not to serve the love of the flesh.

6. Be therefore spiritual, be pure and sanctify yourselves so that you become as pure and holy as I, your Father am - then you will not be offended at Me, your God - because I always preach about love, but understand that it is only about the spiritual love towards God and man as neighbour, through which you become My children; and to these, everything is pure, for to the pure, everything is pure.

7. This is in response to the false wisdom of those who themselves still stand too low to know that God as Father and Son is love. Amen.

CHAPTER 46

PROPHECY ABOUT THE BROTHERHOOD OF MAN

Zurich, 19 June 1904

1. High thoughts of the expressions of love by the human heart circle the skies of the heavenly ether, where the love-spirits of the supreme or children's heaven dwell around their Father Jesus and warm themselves in unspeakable pleasures of love of the Divine Sun, 'Jesus'. Yes, it is high thoughts when the children of God on earth speak of the brotherhood of man in the love-spiritual sense, which finds its echo in the uppermost heaven; because the uppermost heaven consists of spirits of pure love, of pure children in the spirit of virtues, which I exemplified to all of you 1800 years ago as an imitative example. (Described in the Christian Theosophical *Prayer Book*)

2. The word " brotherhood" is a spiritual word, because it has all people, who are otherwise unspeakably far apart and separated, as the object of Divine love, whose supreme leader should and must be I, Jesus Myself; otherwise no human brotherhood can ever take place on earth, because wealth and poverty, power and powerlessness, education and crudeness, nobility of heart and wickedness, nationality, language and hatred of man, have divided the world with insurmountable depths into classes and nations.

3. High ideals find their friends, lovers and spiritual representatives in the high ether, because only there where I live does the sun of eternal love shine, because I Myself am this sun.

4. If you want to become My children, you must, through My virtues as the Son of Man, soar up into those bright regions of the eternal jubilation, the eternal joy and the ineffable pleasures of My Father's love, which forms heaven or eternal life in God in human hearts. Heaven and earth should be united by true human love, which is the brotherhood of all people, whether high or low, rich or poor, into a loving spiritual family of the children of God. One for all, and again all for one, shall be the word and heart of all.

5. Liberty, equality and brotherhood should be the banner the of true brotherhood of people, classes and nations - for without these, the realization of the Kingdom of God on earth is unthinkable, because as long as people are divided into classes, societies and nations, it is impossible to think of the realization of My Divine plan of the establishment of the kingdom of love on earth, which should be an earthly paradise.

6. Dear children! Often think of these My words, of the words of your heavenly Father, I Who want to make you exceedingly happy, but for Whom you put all possible obstacles in My way so that My Divine purposes with you are - even if not thwarted, still delayed if I do not intervene with means of force and suddenly - by means of world events - destroy your earthly conditions to subordinate you to My will. But also this will take place because most men only mock My words and put themselves into the shoes of My writing instruments instead of weighing them with love and wisdom on the golden scales of truth and Divine love, to their advantage!

7. It is very difficult for Me to hold My hand of judgement over you and to send you daily so and so many misfortunes on earth. But things are going on in the world today as in the time of Noah, when the flood of sin already began to flood the streets of the gigantic city of Hanoch. They joked and laughed and made merry rowing around in barges until things got worse and worse and finally all drowned, of which the Caspian Sea and the Aral Sea remained as living witnesses of My punishment on the incorrigible. A lot of misfortunes happen day after day, and

what is the consequence thereof? It only stimulates your curiosity to read the "news"! But that you would think that they are punishments of My love, to draw people's attention to their great sinfulness - that, no-one can think of anymore! What remains for Me but to multiply events, to enlarge them!

8. Look at the Nordic Colossus![147] I awakened many spirits of freedom in him, but they become martyrs of the grossest barbarism, of irreconcilable absolutism! But I do not rest - with shame and harm, barbarism will be chastised until the ship of the kingdom falls apart and the floods of My Spirit of freedom will flood the gigantic kingdom and introduce the culture of Divine love. Thus I will have to proceed with all kingdoms that act against My civilizing plans in terms of Divine Love, as it is written in the words of the prophetic prophecies of the Old Testament about My present return on earth, which has already begun.

9. Who does not want to understand My spiritual language with good will, he will feel it through the rod of correction, under which force he will sink. Look into the countries of Europe where My children have been forged through centuries into the fetters of spiritual oppression and moral degradation, how quickly the breakthrough of changes has come! To work unseen miracles through which the freedom of the religious life would have been put in fetters by Myself, I allow multiple elements to achieve the liberation of men from the spiritual chains of the wolves in sheepskin, what otherwise cannot be carried out.

10. For a social democrat who denies God would convert sooner than a Christian seated in the letter, or in spiritual stultification. So there we have the golden age of twentieth-century civilization! Much is written and preached about progress, religion and brotherhood, but - unfortunately - most of such human happiness has no true light in its cause and therefore does not work.

11. Dear children! Flock around Me, your Saviour. Let Me instruct you through My books, which offer you My instruments of Christian Theosophy - then it will work if you become of a good, humble heart, loving Me and My children, for then the high brotherhood in the light of Divine love, of which I, Jesus Myself, am the Central Sun, will send you heavenly rays of love-warmth for the truth of the Divine Word and its meaning into your hearts and enliven you to the imperishable life in God. Amen.

PART 3

Jesus Christ according to His earthly origin and His Divine Word in the Holy Scripture

CHAPTER 47

Events and conditions of recent times

Graz, July 16, 1903

1. My dear children, with the previous demonstrations of the Divinity of Christ, and with these also of the Bible, you have received a solid foundation on which the Light from Above continues to be built and manifested in it's true greatness and holiness.

2. In all times, men who forget God have dared to touch the sanctity of the Divine Word of the Bible, and have deformed it's inner value, or have tried to erase it completely, of which the history of the New Testament relates frightening facts about how he handled himself with the Doctrine of the salvation and love of God.

3. Now you are at the conclusion of the great struggle for truth, and therefore the feverish agitation, for or against Christ. On the one hand, the seekers of Light and Truth, which am I, Christ; on the other hand, the dark workings of hell and it's spirits.

4. The clock of time already strikes the hour, since the struggle fluctuates like the sea when the storm overtakes the waves and wants to swallow everything in itself. My Divine Spirit works in My children and agitates them, so that they no longer have any rest, as they seek the truth as I Myself have instructed them and have brought to you as a happy message from My Heavens, so that you may become blessed and happy, and may one day come to Me in My Father's House. Hence this portentous religious agitation and the formation of hundreds of new societies and associations in order to investigate the Truth and the Light. Even the peoples of the Israelites, buried in trade, suddenly awoke and founded and activated a number of Jewish writings and associations, since not only the spiritualists, the Salvation Army and a multitude of other unions are striving to spread the Divine Light in the world, but even to the Jews My Light has risen, so much so that the time of the Messiah's coming is now imminent for them as well.

5. They know well that their ancestors rejected and crucified the Messiah, but at His present coming they want to welcome Him with love. Therefore many Jews have switched to the New Testament religion of Christianity, of which only the Judeo-Christian revisitation of Hamburg has about 10,000 subscribers (year 1903). The aforementioned Jewish societies develop a great and fervent movement to populate Palestine with their lineage again.

6. Several decades ago, before the year 1870, all Jews were still dead for the idea of the coming of the Messiah, they lived only for their trade and well-being. Except that the prophecies of the return of Christ, which are found in large numbers in the Old and New Testament, meet their fulfillment; therefore I, Jesus-Jehovah, have lit up to the Jews the Light of knowledge for the truth and love for the ancestral homeland, and therefore the coming and settling of the Jews in Palestine, of which there are already over 70,000[148].

7. Thus I guide men and prepare them for My return. The Salvation Army has a huge number of followers. Spiritism has around 20 million adherents and so do other religious circles in greater and lesser numbers. Everyone is agitated, everyone is moving, everyone seeks Light and Truth. Look in all European states how people move and get excited. Paul wrote to the Corinthians: " Where the Spirit of the Lord is, there is freedom " [2nd Cor. 3,17], so keep your eyes and senses open! The Spirit of God in man no longer wants to allow himself to be enslaved, oppressed and exploited for dark purposes. Satan's world domination is coming to an end, therefore the rebellions and revolutions everywhere in Europe and all kinds of associations for

the purpose of freedom of body and soul.

8. The battle has ignited, on the one hand the Spirit of Christ is fighting, on the other hand, the spirit of Satan with his helpers - hence the dark bustle of the spiritual powers, where the struggle between Christ and Satan is fought. So everywhere false prophets come into the picture who want to eliminate God and His holy Word of the Bible. Here My prophecy is fulfilled in Matthew, chap. 24 verse 24, where we read: " In that time, false Christs and false prophets will arise who will do great signs and wonders, to - if it were possible - deceive even the elect ."

9. Open your eyes, use the white sword of your spirit and look at the bustle of religious parties, associations, societies and communities and their public teachings and efforts, and if you don't discover many Christs there as false prophets, then say to yourselves: "We are not enveloped only by one, but by a sevenfold blanket of Moses in the light and in the intellect!" .

10. As mentioned above, the hand of the religious time clock already strikes one hour . One enters the best, victory bends over to the side of the Light, since all the struggles, all the efforts of the religious resurrection against the darkness of the prophets in the service of Satan, are only crude preparations for the passage to the divine central Light of authentic Doctrine of Christ in Christian Theosophy.

11. The Light from the East is I, Christ, and no other teacher of religion. Therefore, gather around this Light, since there is no other light either in Heaven or on Earth, for Christ is the fundamental primal Light of all infinite Divinity. This Light of eternal life is brought to meet you in Christian Theosophy. But Christian Theosophy is not based only on it's current books dictated by Me, by the Father Jesus, but also recognizes the Bible, and therefore I, your Father Jesus, for the illumination of the truth in the Bible, I proceed against the Babel of professor Delitzsch [149].

*

[Translator's note: The rest of this book is missing from the German version, so it was necessary to switch over to an Italian translation. If the style differs somewhat, please know that the greatest care possible was taken to uphold the integrity of truth throughout]

*

47.1 Explanations of the Bible misunderstood by Delitzsch

Graz, 16 July 1903

12. The Bible is a Book of symbols, i.e. spiritual correspondences, whose inner meaning or core, already for about 2500 years is not clear to man, because man have become spiritually fallen and obscure for those higher spiritual expressions. Among such obscurantists is also found the German Assyriologist, Professor Friedrich Delitzsch of Berlin.

*

13. The cuneiform writings of the Assyrian-Babylonian empire are compiled in good numbers with teachings of correspondences of the spiritual language, and this Professor Delitzsch does not understand, therefore he does not understand correctly even the inner core, but rides the dead letter and the symbols that he cannot decipher rightly. It is therefore easily imaginable that he will have to run into the greatest contradictions and errors, especially if he turns against God to discard Him as the Author of the Holy Scriptures; then he is left with the intellectual

wisdom that Satan serves, while I, the Spirit of God who dwells in his chest and in the Bible, being the Author, although not of the totality, however of a relevant part, I have withdrawn and not I enlighten more, because He has denied Me with his anti-Biblical explanations.

14. The gift of interpretation of the Holy Scriptures is granted only to God-fearing men, lovers of God and neighbor, but not to the presumptuous, ambitious, greedy and world-famous men, of which in the course of the explanation I will give some very demonstrations. marked. Delitzsch is a professor of theology and therefore even more to be pitied because he abandoned the path of Truth and turned against Me, his God, and against My holy Word of the Bible against which he rages.

15. On February 12, 1903, he gave a lecture that caused a great sensation, and therefore was discussed by all the newspapers. The conference was attended by the imperial couple, the chancellor of the empire, the generals, ministers, professors and other high-ranking people. The professor's judgment was essentially the following: "There is no greater aberration of the human spirit, such as believing that the Bible is a personal revelation of God. The content of the Bible itself contradicts this conception many times. (...) For the researcher, the Bible is nothing more than a human work, in many cases a questionable human work ".

16. By this, Delitzsch denied the biblical message that Moses had received the Ten Commandments from God.

*

17. Furthermore, Delitzsch asks whether it can truly be believed that the entire Mosaic Law comes from Divine Revelation, since these Ten Commandments and this Mosaic Law already existed many centuries before Moses in Babylon, and Professor Winkler embellishes one of his writings that Anterior Asian society published with the image of an ancient relief: (Hammurabi receiving his laws from the sun god. Hammurabi, king of Babylon lived around the year 2050 after Adam at the time of Abraham, ie 600 years before Moses)[150]. Delitzsch says: "Honestly, apart from the divine revelation that every man carries within him, that is, his own intellectual wisdom, we do not need anything else". In doing so, Delitzsch declared that every man is a god, and therefore there is no such God as the devout Christian imagines him, since his atheist explanation embraces every man in this sense!

*

47.2 Clarifications against Delitzsch

Graz, 17 July 1903

18. Since Delitzsch became so sure of victory with this Sun-god that he raised intellectual wisdom to his own divinity in the style of Nietzsche[151], it is necessary to intervene immediately with clarifications that reject this denying claim of God and, with scientific proofs, present it as heresy.

19. It is precisely in more recent times (1897-1899), through French excavations in Susa[152] on the ruins of Nineveh, in particular through the successful discovery of a stele[153] with rich cuneiform writings by Hammurabi, of which the Bible in Genesis 14:9 mentions with the name Amrafel, as a contemporary of Abraham in the year 2055 after the creation of Adam, who about the middle of the 21st century after Adam, united the north and south of Babylon.

20. As for the Sun god, things stand according to My revelations in Christian Theosophy as follows: the primordial inhabitants of Egypt, of Chaldea etc., were Adamic immigrants, who

brought with them the original religion of God which, for the most part, was equal to the pure teaching of Christ. But before I continue to describe it to you, a clarification from Christian Theosophy must precede, in order to better understand the whole.

*

47.3 The origin of the Earth and of man

Graz, 17 July 1903

21. On this occasion I want to observe the fact that the Earth was ejected from the primordial central Sun 6.5 billion years ago through a volcanic eruption as a glowing body, and that the creation of the Earth, in its present form, includes a period of development. of six spaces of time. On the other hand, the hypotheses of those scholars who establish the human lineage from 8000 to 250,000 years, commit the biggest mistake, just as the Indian-Buddhist religious philosophers commit the biggest mistake, who believe that the human lineage is already old of 900,000 up to one million years. In this hypothesis there is no maha Atma, which means: "great Light of God", but ara Atma, which means: "little Light of God", since according to the direct revelations that I, Jesus have given you, 4151 years before My birth, there was no human race with finely articulated sounds or with more highly developed linguistic instruments.

*

47.4 The pre-Adamites

22. The pre-Adamites are certainly older than a few thousand years, but they did not have a language like you do. Scholars believe that the pre-Adamic people have become extinct and look for their remains in the petrified strata of the Earth etc., while the pre-Adamites continue to live in the Hottentots[154], dwarf men and Papuans[155], and the fundamental 8,000-year-old demonstrations from Nippur[156] and about 10,000-year-old paintings in a cave in southern France are nothing but illusions (deceptions) that God has granted to greatly offend scholars, because they deny God and raise themselves to the gods of science. - After this digression into the matter, I go back to the origin of mythology.

*

47.5 The origin, the names and the cause of the rise of the doctrine on the gods

Graz, 27 October and 24 March 1905

23. The ancient progenitors of Egypt and Chaldea were profound poets and singers to the courts of the ancient kings of these countries, and personified in symbols or correspondences, made with good intentions, the characteristics of the one true God.

24. So was Bel, the Sun-god of the Chaldeans or Babylonians, since bel or bal means, in ancient languages, Lord, sun and fire, and means: "The Lord over all, He Who personifies and makes Himself understood in this material way through the beneficial force of the sun, which is equal to the heat of fire, as the God corresponding to Love". Through the rays of the sun, the Love and Wisdom of God is revealed in a electro-magnetic way in nature, and from this, in later times, when humans darkened their soul-spirit with sins, the pagan cult of the sun-god arose in a way material through fire, in Old German, kratu-piru - meaning "Sacrifice of fire", celebrated on the day of the solstice[157]

25. The very latest research, according to (the interpretation of) Delitzsch, found instead of **Bel**, **Marduk**[158] as the superior god of the Babylonians. This Marduk is written ***Ninib*** and referred to as "holder of strength"; - then ***Nêrgal*** or ***Zamama*** as "lord of the struggle" or of the battle; then **Bel**, as "holder of power"; - as ***Nebo*** (this name Delitzsch could not interpret); - ***Nebo*** means "Heaven"; - ***Sin***, as "illuminator of the night"; - ***Samaš*** as “lord of all that is right”; - ***Addu*** as "god of rain", therefore ***Marduk*** is both ***Ninib*** and ***Nêrgal***, both the sun-god and the Moon-god etc., all the names mentioned are only the different ways of naming the god ***Marduk***, they are all one with him and in him.

Delitzsch asks: "Isn't this Indo-Germanic monotheism[159], the doctrine of unity resulting only from multiplicity?" Delitzsch thought wrongly. Well, I want to enlighten the matter from the very foundation:

26. ***Mar-duk*** means Spirit of God: mar is contained in the plural and genitive of the name "Mercurius", which means "Messenger of the gods"; - ***duk*** is the ancient Babylonian form which in Slavic means ***duh***, therefore *Marduk*, no other than the Holy Spirit of God Who proceeds from the Father (Jehovah) and the Son (Jesus Christ). - The epithets or aliases of Marduk are recognizable as above: ***Ninib*** the Divine Force; - ***Nêrgal*** is equal to Zebaoth "Lord of hosts"; - ***Bel*** as the Sun, as the Father of dominion, Who is greater than the Son; - ***Nebo***, is Jehovah or the Father, or Love and is Heaven itself; - Sin is the god of the Moon as the illuminator of the night of your inner life; - ***Samâs*** "the Lord of Justice, Who is I, Jesus, the Wisdom of God; - ***Addu*** as "god of the rain" means: all good comes from above, both the mild solar light and the fruitful rain. - You see, this is the *Marduk*, he is the *Elohim*, that is the Divine totality: Love, Wisdom and Omnipotence, namely: Father, Son and Holy Spirit. And so we want to consider again the further clarification of the aliases of the one God: Marduk, Elohim, or Holy Spirit in God according to the core of His Name.

27. The name Jupiter, in the primordial language, represents the Goodness and Love of the Father from eternity: ju as good appears in the word *Ju-da* (as Jehu-da) which means "The Good", then also in the Greek *en*, in Irish *eo* and Hungarian *io*; - *pitar* as Father is contained in Sanskrit. However, I do not want to bore you with the philology, but to report the facts accomplished:

I. *Apollo* was the Wisdom of the Father and *Minerva* represented the Power and the application of this Wisdom.

II. *Mercury* signified the Omnipresence of the One God through His omnipotent Will. Almighty Will, therefore called the messenger of the gods.

III. *Venus* represented Magnificence, Beauty and the eternal, constant youthfulness of God's Essence.

IV. *Vulcan* and *Pluto* represented the full powers of the one God on the Earth as a whole, whose powers consisted of the subterranean fire and it's power that shakes the world - power that is revealed through earthquakes.

V. *Mars* represented divine Seriousness, and judgment and death for the judged.

VI. *Neptune* represented the working Spirit of the one God in all the waters, as through them He enlivened the Earth, as the almighty Lord and God of water.

VII. *Isis* and *Osiris* represented the Divine, untouchable Holiness, which is Divine Love and Wisdom eternally originating in Itself.

VIII. Therefore also the Greek *Zeus* (Jupiter) means nothing else than "Lord", with Whose Name we also indicate today as God.

28. And so all the other inferior gods represented nothing more than the characteristics of the one God in their corresponding images. With time, however, self-interest, self-love and the lust for domination blinded and darkened mankind. They lost the Light of the spirit, and with it, the knowledge of the language of correspondences, they became pagans, because they were coarse materialists. They lost God and began to worship His symbols or the images of His characteristics.

29. This is what happens to Professor Delitzsch. He is arrogant because of the illusion of his high erudition and his know-it-allness[160]. Arrogance is the greatest sin before God, and he who suffers from it becomes gloomy, and in his gloomy intellectual wisdom, begins to deny and to drag into the mire the Divine Truths and the Bible.*

CHAPTER 48

SCHUMI'S INVITATION TO RECOGNIZE THE BIBLE AS THE HOLY WORD

Graz, 18 July 1903

I, Schumi, am known as a critical researcher among men of high science. But with the Bible I do not proceed with intellectual wisdom, but with love, humility and reverence before the Most Almighty Who in truth, as already mentioned, did not have it written in everything, but in certain chapters. The Bible, in fact, is a sacred Book that to the wise intellectual, exclaims the "noli Me tangere!", Or rather: "Do not touch Me with your outrageous critical fury, but bend your knees deeply before the supreme holy Author who made to write through His chosen instruments, and pray to Him in the deepest humility of love for the clarification of His inner core, since He alone can open the doors to His profound mysteries, those of Eternal Life, otherwise no-one else outside of the one whom God has called and enlightened for this ". The ancient peoples in their obscurantism, worshiped the symbols of the Divine Characteristics as gods, who - through the presumption of scientific greatness, turned to matter and thereby became dark, biblical liquidators of the present time, idolizing their own person and speaking of Me, God, and My holy Word, in an arrogant and degrading way. This is precisely the difference between once and now - at the same time, however, it is also a sensational demonstration of the great progress in the obscurantism of the human spirit of the present.

CHAPTER 49

DELITZSCH'S DEPRECIATION OF THE BIBLE

Graz, 1903

1. Professor Delitzsch continues to argue and asks: "*How are things with the Ten Commandments in the light of scientific investigation? We know from Dillmann[161] that there is more than one text of the Ten Commandments, and certainly texts that over time came to differ from each other very much. In reality, the things of the Ten Commandments are like this: since ancient times, customs and laws had been formed, there were rules for acting in the home and in the community, towards others and towards the Divinity. All these norms were put together and attributed to Moses (sic!), So that in tradition he appears as the spiritual author of all that is contained in the Mosaic laws. We now know that in Babylon, long before the Mosaic time, there was a well-ordered rule of law, with laws in which all the provisions that Moses established, are found. At the forefront is the protection of orphans, widows and the weak[162]. But who in the whole world would want to believe that the laws of Babel are of divine origin? Just as those of human origin are good, so are the Mosaic ones* ".

2. Even in the Bible, chaff can be separated from wheat - this chaff are men who tend to money, honor and dominion; but it is not men who think logically and act reasonably who are throwing out the bath water with the child, but only those who, dark in spirit, tend towards money, worldly reputation and presumptuous authority.

*

49.1 CLARIFICATIONS ABOUT THE LAWS OF MOSES

Graz, 16 July 1903

3. The truth: The laws that Moses announced, were in fact not revelations of God, but since the time of mankind, there were ancient jurisdiction that developed in all relationships of life. Moses lived in the Pharaoh's court and there existed laws for all existing cases, and since at the court, the Priestly caste had the most prominent role and Moses was raised by them and educated in all sciences, he was a man of law and believed that he should be so, because it had the appearance of correctness. When he was called by Me, Jehovah, to lead the people of Israel, he truly received the Ten Commandments from Me under thunder and lightning, so that the people would respect them. But the remaining laws were not given directly by Me, but I appointed Moses as a guide and told him to instruct the people in everything according to his best wisdom and knowledge to put everything in order.

4. Later he developed a great activity and promulgated in My Name all the knowledge of the laws he has learned and known, so that the people could observe them better. Some of these laws are good, while others are of such a barbaric origin and go against My Divinity, which any critical seeker of My Divine teaching like given by Jehovah in Jesus Christ will quickly recognize that they fit My Doctrine like a fist in the eye. If the laws of Moses had come directly from Me, then I should have taught the same thing that is in the law of Moses, but I did not, but after his death, I said through other prophets that the slaughter- and atonement-sacrifices that Moses had introduced were an abomination, and as Jesus I showed with My Doctrine how and of what My Divine Law is constituted - a Law which is called "Love". Therefore it is necessary to thoroughly investigate My Doctrine as Jesus, and it will be found that Moses has certainly given

with My authorization the laws in My Name, but here and there they are strongly detached from My Doctrine, the one that I, as Jesus Self, preached as the Law of God's love.

5. That I supported Moses and Aaron and their successors in office and in their dispositions is true, because with this I protected their lives, because the people would otherwise have stoned them and, in the end, would have fallen into paganism if they would not have often seen and experienced My protecting hand. As Jesus, I also abolished from My pure teachings the ceremonies in divine service and established only the worship of God in the spirit through love of the heart, and in truth through the activity of love of neighbor towards the poor and needy.

*

49.2 The Bible as Holy Scripture is the Divine Word

Graz, 16 July 1903

6. The Bible is called Holy Scripture because I, God, in the Bible have perpetuated My holy Word through the prophets and apostles, since all prophecies and teachings have Myself as subject in My administration with humans as My children. The Bible contains the Doctrine of Love, and those who follow this, become happy. The great Commandment of Love unites Me, God, with My children - therefore Heaven on Earth. Whoever reads the Bible with love, humility and reverence towards God, finds there eternal life; On the other hand, those who read it only to become more learned and a more sensible critic, read darkness and hell from it, and not the Light or the Spirit of Life.

7. The Bible provides compelling demonstration that in it's incomprehensible verses is the Divine Word, which show that they would never have been written if it were human work - for men so full of spirit, most wholesome and reasonable thinking as were all My Divine instruments without exception, would never have written something that is contemplated with the external intellect, often resembling great nonsense, but these are corresponding symbols, because the Bible is wrapped in symbols, like a man's body in clothing. Therefore I have spoken with such mystical expressions, enclosing the Divine truth with a hard shell, like the hard shell of a walnut, because I did not want ambitious, selfish and world-loving career-chasers to understand My words there, and this because of the very great danger of profaning what is *holy*.

*

49.3 Fulfilled prophecies are related by the books of John Urquhart

Graz, 16 July 1903

8. If you want to know the truth about the fulfilled prophecies of the Bible concerning the lands of Phoenicia, Egypt, Babylon, Idumea and the land of Israel, as well as about the primeval linguistic uniqueness of the Babylonians and the Jews, and about historical events which unequivocally demonstrate both peoples to be of a common primordial origin from the sons of Noah, Shem and Ham, since from the end of the flood (1657 years from Adam) to the birth of Abraham in Ur of Chaldea (1978 years from Adam) only 321 years, in which short time a people and their language can change little, especially if a special disturbance does not occur in their midst. Do not read the writings of the dark suppressors of God or of atheistic men, but rather read John Urquhart's book entitled: "The Fulfilled Prophecies, or God's Seal on the Bible" and the two books "The Most Recent Discoveries and the Bible"[163].

9. In fact, in the scholarly historical Biblical researcher John Urquhart, I brought into the world a man who held up the banner of Divine Truth, and successfully fought against the dark powers of hell, assigning them to ignorance and lies. Under the impetus of this warrior, the false prophets with their false assumptions and exposures came into the light, and smashed their wise boasting, hitting against the rock of Truth that the mighty fighter of Truth has erected against them, as the impetuous waves of the sea break on the rocky coast.

CHAPTER 50

GOD'S WAY OF EXPRESSION IS AS A FATHER SPEAKING TO HIS CHILDREN

Graz, 18 July 1903

1. Some scholars clash with the simplicity of the Word of God, and say: "God is the supreme Wisdom, therefore what He dictates, should bear the imprint of the most perfect purity of expression". - But they do not reflect on the fact that God speaks to his children, and not to the professors, doctors and philosophers of the world.

2. Scholars also talk to their children in the simple mother tongue, but not in the incomprehensible language-jumble of Latin, Greek, English, Arabic, Sanskrit and the like. They also don't know how God dictates.

3. I said this for the scribe to understand Me according to his instruction. My holy Word indeed emerges from the heart, but it is grasped by reason, delivered to the intellect and formed in a flash already according to his instruction, and pronounced for the annotation; all this happens with the speed with which man thinks and speaks.

A note from Schumi

> How many times have I, Schumi, written in my dictation a Latin or Greek word that corresponded to my way of expressing myself, but later I reflected on whether the foreign terminology was understandable to everyone, and then the sentence seemed too learned, I deleted the foreign word and instead wrote the German one that everyone understands, and this simple language is then understood by the peasant and the citizen; and this is also the opinion of the supreme wise God, because He Himself told me: "I do not know other humans than My children, and with these I speak as a Father and not as a philosopher."

CHAPTER 51

THE SENSUAL-MATERIAL MAN CANCELS THE DIVINE IN HIMSELF

Graz, 19 July 1903

1. The person who withdraws from the Divine and prefers the sensual-material, becomes animalistic, even if for the decorum he keeps it secret, because his soul becomes ugly, being turned towards matter and it's polyp-like characteristics, it attracts him only to enjoyment, which is a long known affair, and such people are then enemies of the Divine and try to eradicate Him by all available means.

2. I prophesied: "Heaven and Earth will pass away, but My Words will not pass away" - as the prophecy that the lineage of Jews of the tribe of Judah will not be extinguished until all that I have foretold in the Divine Word of the Bible. And you see, the tribe of Judah in fact still lives, and the time of it's release from matter is already near.

3. The Bible is the ancient history of over 6000 years of the people of Israel of the Old and New Testament, and it's prophecies are still fulfilled today and tomorrow and in the coming decades.

Schumi comments:

I have found some errors in the Bible, but I did not reject it for this, nor considered it as a human work, but I have separated the chaff from the wheat, which is the duty of every researcher, but it can be done only with the illuminating help of our divine spirit. The book published by me in April 1903 "The guide of M. Luther in the afterlife" through the Father Jesus, until his perfection as great and prince in the New Jerusalem, shows us what the Bible is and how to proceed with it, so that we can draw Light, rather than darkness.

CHAPTER 52

The history of the Jewish (Hebrew) people

Graz, 18 July

1. The history of the Jewish people is the central Light of God's government with mankind. Since the days of Adam I have chosen this people as a particular class of people through which I have wished to preserve the world from complete decline into paganism. In fact, in the year 919 after the creation of Adam, I prophesied to Ghemela, the later mother of Noah, that from one of her future descendants, the Savior of mankind would come to redeem her from original sin - namely the Messiah, or Christ; and to Mary - who then lived and was called Pura[164] - that this would be I, Jehovah Myself.

2. So I repeated this prophecy also in the year 1657 (from Adam) to Noah, and to Abraham in the year 2055 (from Adam) I said that through his seed all the peoples of the Earth would be blessed, the same thing I had repeated to Isaac and to Jacob, and in the year 1038 BC. I established the house of David as the main line, from which the spiritual King would come to the eternal throne of David, in other words the incarnation of God in the Messiah through a chaste virgin from the seed of David.

3. So I initiated My descent to Earth after having all the great prophets describe in detail the coming and continuation of the history of My activity in the world, which has gone into fulfillment, word for word.

4. You will ask yourselves: "Why did God use precisely this Jewish people, whom we hated so much, as His chosen people, to make these people the example of His Divine mercies towards humanity? Wouldn't he have fared better with other people?”

5. This opinion of mankind suffers from insensitivity to the enemy raising from within themselves. One cannot judge unfavorably the love of a people for it's nationality and homeland! Has not the Jew the same right to love their people and their native country as the German, the Romanian, the Slav, the Greek, etc., love their own?

6. You see, the Jew (Hebrew) was proud of his authentic faith, of his own history and of his homeland. It built with confidence on Me, Jehovah, that I would send them the Savior in the Messiah, and therefore it rebelled against his enemies who wanted to oppress them. The history of Judaism (Hebraism) is closely intertwined with the Love of God, and no people of the Earth can compare with the Jews regarding My - God's - personal guidance, and reproach Me for once making this people, among all the peoples of the Earth, the chosen people of the world, if you do not want to consider also the Jews as your equals - since I, Christ, have truthg suffered for all the humans of this world, be they Jews, Christians, Mohammedans, Chinese or pagans.

CHAPTER 53

About the origin of Palestine

Graz, 20 July 1903

1. Palestine is the promised land of the chosen people, and in Canaan near Bethlehem, on a high fire-spewing mountain, which later at the time of the flood sank into the depths of the Earth through a great earthquake, was the cradle of mankind, and at the river of Jacob happened Adam's great sin, whereby mankind lost the sonship of God.

2. However, Palestine was also the setting for Jehovah's greatest works. Here My Incarnation took place, as well as the greatest attestation of humility, since God Himself became a Brother for mankind, His creatures. Here I Myself preached My Divine Gospel in the person of Jesus Christ, and here also took place My great Act of Love on Golgotha, where I reconciled My children with the Holiness of God in Myself, with the redemption on the cross. I once and for all redeemed original sin. Jerusalem saw Christ's glorious victory over death and the Satan of the world, which I sealed by walking among My elect on the third day, after giving My blood and life for the sins of My children with My resurrection, in transfigured Magnificence and Holiness.

3. I, Jesus, said to the Samaritan woman at Jacob's well: "From the Jews will come the salvation of the world" - and as I said before, I, the Most High and Most Holy, have established My incarnation in the tribe of Judah, and I have also fulfilled it. I Myself was therefore a Jew according to the flesh. Therefore the Jews should not be despised, but he who hates the Jews because of their present commercial vices, must consider that he is a descendant of those who have stolen everything from the Jews and, with their hardness, have made them become what that they are today.

4. How do you not want to be able to love the Jew, since in your breast lives the same Spirit of God Who once, as a Jew, suffered on Golgotha for your sins, and died according to the flesh? I, Christ, Who once visited Palestine and the neighboring countries, and instructed the people of God, dwell in you and in every man, and speak in you with inspiration through the awareness of what is good or bad. This Christ is the eternal and only God, because apart from Christ, there is no God at all.

5. It is true that the chosen people have often failed in a gross way against Me, especially with the crucifixion of the Messiah, but for this they have also been punished properly.

*

53.1 Today's crucifixion of Christ

Graz, 20 July 1903

6. I ask you: "Among the Christians of today, are there not many even worse crucifiers of Christ than the Jews once were?". In fact, today they know Who I, Christ, was; they know the Holy Scriptures and it's Holiness through the fulfilled prophecies, which were brought about by the Divine primordial Light of the highest Heaven by Me, God Myself, and in My own supreme holy Person, I preached the Doctrine of salvation and eternal life. And you see, millions and millions of people cry out: “To the cross!”… In the company of their false prophets Darwin[165], Nietzsche and Delitzsch, as they deny and reject God, the Divinity of Christ and the Holy Scriptures!

7. Here is the great people of the crucifixion of the supreme Holy God in Christ, a prey of hell and Satan. Therefore recognize yourself, you poor blind people, what you are and what you do! You crucify your God and Father Jesus daily and at every hour in your dark anti-Christianity!

8. You run after the dark hellish spirits in human form and glorify their false prophecy as if it were the light of the world, and forget Me, your God and Father; Me, Who redeemed you with My blood and with My very life, welcoming you as children of God. You are also destined by Me, by the Father Jesus, to become children of God, because I am your God the Father, and you are destined to someday become heavenly heirs and princes in the great worlds of Creation that orbit the Firmament. But many, instead of aspiring to salvation and glory, reject God, reject His holy Revelations and run after Satan and his collaborators, glorifying them, rejecting God, mocking His holy Word and dragging it into the mud according to their formulas.

CHAPTER 54

False prophets are clairvoyants of falsehood

Graz, 21 July 1903

1. There are also other false prophets who, with their gift of clairvoyance, drag the world into the darkness of their false gospel.

2. These people believe that what they see is the pure truth, but that each of these clairvoyants sees and teaches other absurdities, is evidenced by the fact that they see only what they believe, because the spiritual man's faith is his inexorable judge, and therefore the clairvoyants of false prophecy see their own ghosts, that is, their own imaginations of faith, but not the truth.

3. The same thing happens to the spirits of the first hell, who see before them the imaginations of their mind, but when they stretch out their hand, they are only illusions, and not truth.

4. Therefore, do not allow yourselves to be indoctrinated by the false prophecy presented as truth by clairvoyants who have deviated from the truth, because their false relationships will be destroyed,… as anti-Christian!

*

54.1 144,000 Jews incarnate as Christians

5. After this explanation we want to take a step back to our historical thread.

6. The poor Jewish people have severely punished themselves by walking on false paths; nevertheless, I have not withdrawn My Love from this people, but soon I will move in pity on their behalf, since the prophecies are at the beginning of their fulfillment.

7. Jerusalem will rise to it's ancient place more splendid than it once was; Palestine will again be the promised land of the Jews with the Christian-Theosophical faith. The hatred of faith and nationality will disappear, and the Jew will rejoice in his brother who until then did not know and do not know that among the Christians, a 144,000 Jews of the Old Testament and of the time of Jesus were reincarnated among all twelve tribes of Israel, who in the future will visit the holy places of Palestine with great love for Me, Jesus, and will rejoice in the renewed magnificence of the homeland of Jesus.

CHAPTER 55

Salvation comes from the Jews

Graz, 22 July 1903

1. "Salvation comes from the Jews" [John 4:22], I Myself said at Samaria, and verily this came for the whole world and for the whole kingdom of spirits, since I, Jesus Myself, said that I am the King of the Jews, which means, etymologically translated, King of good people - that is, the spiritual King on the eternal throne of David, as I, as Jehovah also prophesied, Whose supreme Holiness you ardently worship on your knees, as your Creator, Father and Sovereign from eternity, recognizing Me as your Omnipotent, Omniscient, all-seeing because being Omnipresent, infinite and eternal, One and Triune God the Father, Son and Holy Spirit in the person of Jesus Christ.

2. My wonderful "(great) Gospel of Jesus Christ" [166], which you possess in 10 large volumes, dictated by Me, by the Father Jesus, through Jakob Lorber, is the diamond of your Christian-Theosophical literature. This Gospel is the original of how I, Jesus, once expounded the Doctrine of the Love of God before the apostles and My listeners, and according to these My original words, the religious Jewish men, through the inspiration of the Holy Spirit, briefly wrote the New Testament which has hitherto formed the Book of Light of the world.

3. So it was again the Jews who wrote and left for you the Doctrine of Salvation and Eternal Life, from Peter to Paul, whose epistles and letters you can still read today with high esteem for your edification and for the salvation of your soul and the acquisition of your own eternal life.

*

55.1 The house of David reincarnated

Graz, 22 July 1903

4. These Jewish men, with the exclusion of Judas Iscariot, were all from the tribe and seed of David - including Peter and Paul.

5. And again the house of David is strongly represented on earth today, for many tribal descendants from the royal bloodline of David are reincarnated and have their high task to fulfill for the establishment of the millennial kingdom of God on earth, namely, the banner of Jesus, which is the pure teaching of God, as I Myself recited it - to preach and victoriously conquer the world for the truth in the struggle against the lies of the world; because for this they are called and chosen

6. Marvel not at the secret plans of salvation of your Father God Jesus. You see that the Christians for the most part become anti-Christians, because they live and act against the teachings of Christ, that is why I have let the old representatives of the genuine faith in God of old come among the Christians and let themselves be reincarnated. But as once in Me, Christ, being God Myself, only the Son of Man could be seen, so you see in the said men also only ordinary Christians, who have to free the poor people who are stultified, blinded and misled by greedy, honour-seeking and domineering men, from the false prophethood of these unfortunate people and to lead them to the light and to the truth.

7. On the basis of My prophecy which I spoke before Caiaphas, the Bible preserves for you the

great mystery of the return of Christ, the dawn of the Millennial Kingdom of God's Love on earth.

8. I said then: "From now on it will happen that you will see the Son of Man sitting at the right hand of the power of God and coming on the clouds of heaven, accompanied by the angels; then I will sit on the throne of My glory."

9. Behold, this prophecy has been going on since 1840, because in 1800, the archangel Raphael stepped onto the earth and was reincarnated in the Styrian parish of Jaring, municipality of Kaniža, under the name of Jakob Lorber. He was Enoch, the son of the arch-father Jared in Adam's time, who then brought the Divine message to Mary as Archangel Gabriel. From 1840 to 1864, as a prophet or Father's medium in Graz, he wrote the Christian-Theosophical books as direct dictations of your God and Father Jesus Christ, the inner core of which is immediately recognized as Divine and true by God-gifted or enlightened people.

10. Lorber's activity was great; the books he wrote were of highly spiritual and supernatural content, of which the aforementioned great ten-volume New Testament stands out in particular.

11. Apart from this '*Gospel of Jesus Christ'*, the *Household of God*, *My youth story*, the *Three-day scene*, the *Material and Spiritual sun* and a lot of other dictated books of inestimable spiritual value which I gave you through Lorber, are also especially outstanding.

12. After Lorber, the archangel Japheth, the son of Noah and father of the Caucasian-European white race, appeared. His name was Gottfried Mayerhofer, he was a German from Munich and lived as a retired Greek Major in Trieste. He wrote *The Sermons*, *The Secrets of Life* and *Proclamations of Truth, especially in Creation*. It's only three books, but it's valuable.

13. So, Schumi (the former physician Borus of Nazareth in the time of Jesus. ChtS. IX and XII.) [169] is also there from the highest heaven and has to fulfill his task which I have assigned him. More about this is reported in the magazine *Love* II, chapter 33.

14. You see from this that I, Jesus, am already there in the company of My angels, because hundreds of thousands of high and supreme spirits, angels and archangels and all apostles now live reincarnated in the world. Because the clouds of heaven in which I, Jesus, am to come again, are the Christian-Theosophical books in which you hear My voice, because I Myself speak directly to you through the teaching contained in it, but you do not see My person, because the text of scripture covers Me as a heavenly cloud to your eyes, although I am actually speaking to you Myself.

*

55.2 A fulfillment of the Bible in Zechariah

Graz, 22 July 1903

15. The return of Christ is therefore already here, since the prophecy of the prophet Zechariah 8:23, with it's interior meaning, is fulfilled and sounds like this: "In those days ten men of all the languages of the peoples will grasp a flap of the dress of the Jew and they will say: “We want to go with you, because we have understood that God is with you”.

16. The ten men here signify the Ten Commandments of God, which good people of all the peoples will welcome; the hem of the Jew's robe is the guide in the teachings of the Love of Jesus, of a special man from the tribe of Judah and from the royal house of David, who has now reincarnated on Earth.

55.3 Joel's prophecy for the time of Christ's return

Graz, 22 Luglio 1903

17. As for the time of the apostles, so also applies to the present what one day I had written through the prophet Joel [Joel 3:3-5] for My coming and My return. And you see, what is written there, has already been fulfilled - and you wait undeterred as the five virgins wait for the bridegroom Jesus, while I have already entered here and there, where there was enough oil of love in the lamps of the hearts of the children who are humble and who love Me.

18. You expect blood, fire and pillars of smoke in the sky and on the Earth as signs of Christ's return. But these are only spiritual words of correspondence in their following meanings: blood in heaven is "love for God" and for man in the hearts of good people; blood on Earth is "the oppression and exploitation of man"; fire in the sky is "the fervor of love" for the Divine spiritual among good people; The fire on Earth is "the fervor for mammon's service" and her black plans and her instigations. The pillars of smoke in the sky are the "loving prayers", humble and fervent for God in the heart (as Heaven) of the children of God for the salvation of the world from the claws of Satan, in which he is now completely; and the pillars of fire on Earth are the "lamentations of pain" of the oppressed poor who form the cash cow of the world. These two columns of smoke cry out to God for mercy and compassion, for the changing conditions of the world, since the Sun, as "love for God", has darkened in the hearts of men and is as if dead; and the Moon, as "love of neighbor", has turned into blood, and this means into bloody oppression and exploitation of men. Thus it is necessary to understand the spiritual interpretation of these otherwise incomprehensible words of the prophecy.

19. Particularly striking and confirmed by many, the truth is highlighted in the following words in this cited prophecy: "It will happen in the last days" - thus speaks the Lord - “I will pour out My Spirit on all flesh; your sons and your daughters will prophesy, your children will have apparitions and your old men visions; in those days I will pour out My Spirit even on My handmaids, so that they may prophesy "[Joel 3.1-2].

20. All the above is currently being fulfilled. A multitude of prophecies fill the Christian Theosophical books. You often hear about wonderful dreams about the spiritual life of the present and the future. Some Theosophists have seen Me, the Father Jesus, in dreams and in a waking state. Many have the interior Word which Peter calls "The Prophetic Word".

*

55.4 The spiritual correspondences of the Bible understandable only to those who are called

Graz, 22 July 1903

21. When I came to Capernaum after the feeding of 5,000 men, and in the synagogue I expressed the spiritual words: "Whoever does not eat My flesh and drink My blood, will not have eternal life" [John 6:53], then many abandoned Me, thinking that they were sensible disciples, but who now considered Me to be unreasonable and foolish; instead Peter, who was concerned for the salvation of his soul, told Me in reply: "Lord, You have the Word of eternal life; and we believe and recognize that You are Christ, the Son of God "[John 6:68-69]. Peter's faith, humility and reverence pleased me, and later I explained to him that the Bread of Heaven, or My flesh, is nothing but a correspondence to the Doctrine that I expounded, since I was the Word, or the Wisdom of God according to the soul - and the Blood, which I compared to wine, is

again only the correspondence of My great Love, therefore the apostles ate and drank at the Last Supper the symbols of My Doctrine and of Love without hesitation, since this was not spiritual bread, nor was it spiritual wine, still less My flesh or My blood, but only images of correspondences of My Doctrine and of My Love.

22. Let us therefore take another example regarding the interpretation of the words of the Bible, so that they may not be dead, but spiritual and living and bear fruit, and Luke 2:12 gives us this example by reporting: "And may this be for you the sign of recognition: “You will find a Child wrapped in swaddling clothes, lying in a manger”. So far for Luke - now we proceed to the spiritual use of this verse to apply to the interpretation of Sacred Scripture, which sounds like this: the manger, as a symbol, is like the dead letter in which indeed something lies, but this something is wrapped in the material, in the external - in the fascias, and this exterior is still dead, however. But within these cloths that show themselves externally and wrap around a child, there is Christ, there is the Spirit of God Jehovah Zebaoth, entered into the flesh! Therefore do not gnaw at dead letters, do not be satisfied with the material sense of the swaddling cloths instead of the spiritual, but seek the Child Jesus, the Spirit of Christ! Only then will you be true Theosophists in reading the Bible.

23. In the Apocalypse of John 19.11-13 and 19:16 it is written: "Then I, John, saw Heaven open and behold, a snow-white horse appeared, and the one who rode it is called Faithful and True; He judges and fights with Justice. His eyes are like a flame of fire; on his head I saw many diadems, and he bears a written Name that no-one knows but Himself; and He is clothed in a garment sprinkled with blood and His Name is God. - He wears on His cloak and on His side a written Name: "King of kings, and Lord of lords."

*

I, Schumi, now humbly prayed for the interpretation, to which the Father Jesus told me: "Write!" - And He dictated the following words to me:

24. Who will be able to interpret these verses, so that they correspond to the truth? Nobody, if not the One to whom I, Jesus Myself, explain the meaning of it. Then listen: “And I, John, saw Heaven open and there was everything according to the Doctrine of Jesus, which is Wisdom, or the Theosophy of God. He Himself is the Master, the Faithful and the True, and He judges and orders everything with Justice. His eyes shine with the fervor of love and on his head are many diadems of royal adornment. The name He bears, means the Divine Love that no-one knows except He, because it is the primordial light of his Divinity and, from Him this flows into the infinity of every creation. And he was dressed in a robe dipped in Love, His Name means "the Word of God", as the Soul of Jesus. And on His divine Word and His inner Strength, which is the Holy Spirit in God, is written the holy Name of Jesus: King of kings, Lord of lords”.

25. The interpretations of the incomprehensible verses of the Bible have shown you that the spiritual can only be explained by men called by God, because the Bible can only be explained by Him Who had written it. Thus, Solomon understood the high Song of Songs as much as people do today, even though he was the scribe. And then, how do spiritually dark people want to judge and interpret reasonably and faithfully to the truth the mysteries of the Bible that come from the Wisdom of God? No! This is impossible, just like a blind man wanted to lead another blind man. So do not be guided by the blind - however higher authorities they may be - where it comes to the Divine and the salvation of your soul.

26. Therefore I want to show you how Professor Delitzsch, the suppressor of the God of Sacred Scripture, materially interprets the book of the Divine mysteries of Moses, written with symbols, or with spiritual hieroglyphs, and instead of meaning, he extracts only nonsense, namely Babel. in it's Ciblical confusion.*

55.5 Delitzsch's big mistake

Graz, 23 July 1903

27. Professor Delitzsch has already demonstrated with a 346-page book, published in the year 1881, that Babylon was the cradle of mankind, or Eden. In the story of Creation we speak of a Garden of Eden in which flowed a main river, this again divided into four main rivers, which had the names of Pison, Ghihon, Chiddekel (Hiddechel) and Phrat.

28. The fatal Phrat River became the Euphrates for all scholars, and therefore also for Professor Delitzsch, so the remaining rivers also had to be in Babylon. While Chiddekel (Hiddechel) was called before of the Phrat River, therefore it became the River Tigris, therefore the Pison and the Gihon must also have been in Babylon, and since there are no longer any large rivers, then they must have been small channels or streams. In this way some suppressors of God, through their completely false views, have arbitrarily written the primordial history of mankind. Now listen once and for all how God, inspiring Moses, wrote and spiritually explains to you the garden of Eden:

29. The name "Eden" that includes the garden of paradise, in the primordial language means "desert", and this is the desert-state of the primordial man Adam, when he was still alone and had no-one like him around him, with whom he could dwell.

30. The main river in the Eden of the man-woman Adam was his love for God, which was the only outflow of his interior.

31. After the creation of Eve by Adam, this main river split into four main branches. The first river was called Pison, this was neither the small nameless river in the plateau of Armenia that flows into the Black Sea, nor a stream of Babylon, as Delitzsch teaches, but it was the fiery female love generated through Eve. The gold in her is the state of human procreation. The precious stone in Eve named Bdellium is the stone of wisdom, or the living Love of God that He wants to generate through Eve, and the precious stone Onyx in Eve, is her love for her man.

32. Ghihon is the name of the second main river, but Ghihon is neither the Araxes of the ancients or Aras in the Armenian plateau that flows into the Caspian Sea, nor a water channel in Babylon according to Delitzsch, but the Divine Order by which through Eve's gender, all the spirits once fallen together with Satan-Lucifer will be born, and these are all humans.

33. The third main river is called Hiddekel and is identified with the River Tigris in Babylon - while it is none other than the Divine Order, according to which all humans will come to the rebirth of the spirit - in other words, they must be perfected in the virtues of Jesus, to become children of God.

34. The fourth main river is called Phrat. This name has been the fatality to the wisdom of the wise and the wisdom of the discerning, who now lie in rubble before the truth of My Divine Word, because many high-ranking scholars want to know everything better than God and Moses, and therefore with their contradictory Biblical reports - because of their spiritual darkness - they try to solve it on their own without God.

35. Phrat, in their opinion, was the Euphrates river in Babylon, and therefore Pison, Ghihon and Hiddekel were also there and therefore Eden was also in Babylon; only that the Phrat river was not the Euphrates, but the fire of the male love of Adam as the procreator of mankind.

36. Now, do you see where the Divine Wind blows and what absurdity Delitzsch and all the researchers of Eden have committed so far, because they have not been called to explain the

Bible?

37. Man forms in himself the Garden of Eden through the Divine virtues of Jesus. That tree of Life in Eden was Adam, and the tree of knowledge - that is, of conception - was his woman Eve, is now clear and obvious for everyone. Spiritually they are designated as wisdom and love; materially, however, they are Adam and Eve. This explains the story of the serpent that seduced Eve - Eve's serpent was her selfishness of enjoyment, and the seductive fruit of the tree, using an apple as flowery speech, was Adam himself. The place where hereditary sin took place was at the Jabok River in Canaan.

*

55.6 Who was the cherub of Babylon

Graz, 23 July 1903

38. Among the images that decorate the files in which Professor Delitzsch's lectures are collected, there is also 'the cherub of Babylon', the reproduction of which in some way seems to be interpreted according to the Bible, while on the whole it is a coarse figure that does not correspond at all to the truth.

39. And it is this: the Babylonians learned of this figure from the Jews and carved it in stone. They imagined this figure with a vigorous body signifying strength, considering the wings as a poetic decoration, the human head as intelligence, and the tiara[170] the dominant power of the whole.

40. Professor Delitzsch envisioned the original from the Babylonian imitations according to the prophet's indications, according to which the Jews would take their cherubs (and seraphs), ignoring however that the Jewish pupil was a teacher, while the Babylonian professor was the pupil; hence the absurdity of Delitzsch's hypotheses. For this reason, listen to what sense is found in the graceful cherubim and in the Jewish seraphim:

I. The Jewish cherubs are angels of Wisdom, and the seraphs are angels of Love. Their angelic genius figure represents the human form of God. Their wings are symbols of the floating freedom of the Spirit of God.

II. The cherubs and seraphs, according to Isaiah, in the 6th chapter verses 2-3, are indicated as follows: "The seraphs were held above Him, each one provided with six wings, with two they covered their face, with two they covered their feet, and with two they flew and praised each other saying: 'Holy, holy, holy is the Lord, the ruler of the worlds. The Earth is full of his glory'", etc.

III. The prophet Ezekiel 1:4-14 describes the seraphs as follows: “In the center of the cloud of fire appeared the form of four animated beings; and this was their appearance: they had a human appearance. Each had four faces and four wings. Their legs were straight, and the hooves of their feet were like the hooves of an ox shining like polished bronze. Under the wings on the four sides, they had human hands, and all four had the same appearance and their own wings. As for the similarity of their features, each of the four had the appearance of a man, then the appearance of a lion on the right, the appearance of an ox on the left, and all four the appearance of an eagle. These were their faces, and their wings were spread upwards. In their likeness, those animals appeared as burning coals, similar to torches that moved among living beings; it was a sparkling fire, and from the fire came lightning, and living beings came and went in the manner of the lightning. And I heard the sound of their wings, like the sound of great waters, like the voice of the

Almighty; like the roar of the storm, like the tumult of an encampment."; etc. etc.

IV. In the second vision of Ezekiel 10:14, we also read that the cherubs had four faces, the first the face of a cherub, the second of a man, the third of a lion, the fourth of an eagle.

V. In the Apocalypse of John, chapters 4-7, we read that the four living beings were full of eyes, like the figures already described in Ezekiel.

41. From this description you can see that the Babylonian cherub did not correspond at all to the description here, and represented only a gross distortion of the truth. Considering that the Jews took from the whole description of the grandiose image that Jehovah showed through the prophet the meaning of how the correspondences of the embodied characteristics of the Divine ego were to be understood materially, it did not occur to them to imitate, by means of painted or sculptured figures, the impossible of the grandiose spectacle that the prophets described, of which only a small summary is communicated here which refers to the figure of the cherub and the seraph.

42. The cherubs and the seraphs of the prophetic visions represent in their figure the emanations of the Divine characteristics, in other words: man is the symbol of spiritual power, the lion of strength or the omnipotence of God, the ox meekness and the eagle domination of the ethereal Universe. The faces on all four sides, according to which the cherubs went, signify the outflows of Divine Love towards all the districts of the world. The four wings are the bearers of the four proclaimed images of the Divinity. Straight feet mean firmness, hooves like an ox foot instead the perseverance of God which is held together by Love and Wisdom. The six wings are the six characteristics, since the head, representing Wisdom, is the seventh characteristic of God, Wisdom being the freely active rule that everyone sees in creation, therefore the Creator's love and long-suffering patience are also visible through the wings. circling as active characteristics, while Will, Order, Seriousness and Mercy do certainly exist, but they are hidden from human eyes, because humans in their wisdom observe the whole in Creation, in which they see only the creating Love, the ordering Wisdom and the great Patience in it's long-suffering. The many eyes of the cherubs signify Omnivision and therefore the Omniscience of God.

43. These are therefore the symbols of the Deity that are represented through the cherub and the seraph in the vision of Isaiah, of Ezekiel and in the Apocalypse of John, while the seraphs worshiping before the Ark of the Covenant in the Temple of Solomon, represent the angels of the Love of God communicated to Solomon by Jehovah.

CHAPTER 56

The meaning of Solomon's Song of Songs

Graz, 24 July 1903

1. This is one of the most beautiful and most spiritual songs of the Old Testament that I dictated and made Solomon write. The meaning, as the inner essence of the song, sounds like this: that for you humans, the most pure Love of God is the beautiful bride, the true sister of man and his dear friend. This Divine Love through Me, Wisdom, as the Word of God "Jesus Christ", entered the flesh and dwelt and lived among humans as Man. I, Jesus, am the Friend mentioned as their Spouse, having taught man the Wisdom of God or Theosophy coming from the Love of God, and I have left behind a holy and sure walking stick on the path of purification, spiritualization and divinization of the human in the homeland of his eternal Father.

2. Professor Delitzsch described this Song of Songs as a banal wedding song, that is, very worldly because he could not read it spiritually, so now I, Jesus, want to present to you those specific verses read spiritually, verses that have so baffled the highly learned professor, but spiritually dark, so much so that in the second conference he was highly indignant that something like this was regarded as God's Revelation. These specific verses are particularly the following:

I. In chapter 1, verse 2, the Love of God speaks to His Wisdom of God, from the Name Jesus Christ: "He (that is, Jesus) kisses me with the kisses of His mouth (which are the teachings of His Love). Because his love (his teaching) is more exquisite than wine ".

II. Also in verse 13 the Divine Love speaks to the Wisdom of him Jesus: "You are My (Divine) beloved!". Now Divine Love addresses His Word to all people and says of Jesus: "A (fragrant) bunch of myrrh (is He) for Me, which lies softly (through His Wisdom passed to Love) in My Chest. (of Divine love)."

III. Also in verse 15 Jesus speaks to His Doctrine of the Love of God: "How beautiful you are, My friend, (yes), You are beautiful; Your eyes (announcing only love) are like the looks of pigeons (when they go cooing) "

IV. Also in verse 16 the Doctrine of Love of Jesus speaks: "How beautiful You are, My beloved (Jesus), You are so sweet, like a bed in the green grass."

V. In chap. 2 verse 2, the Love of God expresses the exaltation on the Doctrine of Jesus: "Like a lily among the thorns (of Divine Love) is chastity, this is among girls (which spiritually in correspondence signify religious ethics) My friend (from the mouth of Jesus, therefore the Doctrine of God of Jesus). "

VI. Also in verse 3 the Love of God speaks to the Wisdom of God: "What is the apple tree (graceful) among the trees of the forest, this is My beloved among the young (as beloved Jesus). I long to sit in His (refreshing) shadow (of love), there I live (best); how sweet is His Fruit (Love) to My palate (yearning for love)!."

VII. In verse 8, God's Love says of His Wisdom: "This is the voice (of Jesus) of My Beloved! There He is! He (the God of Love) crosses the mountains, (and) bounds over the hills therefore (to Me, since the princes of the peoples, spiritually called "mountains", and the leaders of the peoples, spiritually called hills, do not like Him, since they are full of

arrogant wisdom; My heart, however, is filled with humble love for Him!)".

VIII. In chapter 4, verse 5, the Love of God speaks to the Doctrine of Jesus: "The breasts of your breast (which here are the love of God and neighbor) resemble two young twins (as lovable creatures) of gazelles. that feed among (white) lilies (of chastity).

IX. Thus in verse 9, Jesus speaks to the Love of God: "You have stolen My heart, oh My sister, My bride (from the ten commandments of God)! You stole My heart with a single glance of your eyes (of the love of God as well as) through a single pearl of Your neck (of love of neighbor).

X. In chapter 6, verse 3, the Divine doctrine of Love speaks: "I belong to My beloved and My beloved (Jesus Who generated Me) belongs to Me; (because) He only grazes among the lilies (of the purity of Love)".

XI. Also in verse 10, the Love of God asks man: "Who is she who advances like the dawn? As beautiful as the moon, as pure as the sun, and as fertile as the armies? " - (Then you will respond to the Love of God as God the Father: "She is the Divine daughter of Jesus, she is the religion of Love. Love is radiant as the dawn; darkness illuminating like the Moon, which spreads love , heat and light like the Sun, and against the cold hardness of Wisdom, like a heroine, she fights with the banner of the Kingdom").

XII. In chapter 7, verse 3, the Love of God speaks to the Doctrine of Jesus: "Your (virgin) navel (nourished by the sucking of Love) is like a round (all-encompassing) cup of faith never devoid of tempered wine (of love); your body (built by love) is like a pile of wheat (corresponding to divine Wisdom), surrounded with lilies (of the virtues of Jesus)

XIII. Likewise in verse 4, God's love continues to speak to the Doctrine of Jesus: "Your two breasts (representing love for God and neighbor) are like twins of a (lovable) gazelle (both born of the primordial Light of God) ".

XIV. In chapter 8 verse 10, God's teaching speaks of Himself: "I am (as strong as) a wall, and as (high) towers are My breasts (love for God and neighbor); therefore I became (the Divine-born) in His eyes as one Who has found benevolence."

XV. Also in verse 14, the Divine-born of the Love of Jesus exclaims to his Bearer: "Run, My Beloved (Jesus!), Be (fast) like the gazelle, like young roe deer above the mountains of spices! (and let Me be carried and announced to all the peoples of the earth, because I, the Son of Divine Love, the eternal born of God, push Myself to seek and find the sheep of the Divine flock - scattered throughout the world through valleys and mountains)

3. Thus sounds this song considered by Professor Delitzsch to be so common and scurrilous in the lower passages for materialists, but overall this is a sublime and magnificent song, composed in the flowery oriental language that nothing in the world can compare to. In any case, My verdict must be taken into consideration, where I say: “In the pure everything is (Divinely) pure”. For Professor Delitzsch, on the other hand, the sublime divine Song of songs, is such a low nuptial song that he found it right to point to this Canticle with particular contempt, and therefore to mark the Bible, also because of this song, as a human work. and not as a Divine revelation. From this you see that if you need Light from Above, you don't have to go to the dark school of materialistic scholars, because that school kills the spirit.

*

56.1 The sensible chicken and the false hens

Graz, 24 July 1903

4. The strangest thing about the inquiring critics of the Bible is the fact that the young chicken, which they believe the Jewish (Hebrew) people to be, turns out to be unusually intelligent and educated with the Bible, while the hen - from which the Jews would have obtained their intelligence - i.e. the Babylonians, Indians (of India), or the Egyptians, etc. - they mixed much nonsense with only gross caricatures and fragments, which in the Hebrew Bible is deposited in pure symbols of the Divine language of the Spirit. This understanding of the truth, distorted by the Assyriologists and archaeologists themselves, seems so absurd, as if one were to say that the European university professor (Delitzsch) obtained his knowledge from stonemasons, herb gatherers and village masters.

*

56.2 The future destiny of the great men who deny Christ

Graz, 24 July 1903

When I, Schumi, wrote the Christian teaching of karma and reincarnation [171], I asked the Father Jesus for information on all the marked and unhappy in the body, where these evils came from, and among them, also what would happen after death to those men such as Darwin, Nietzsche, Delitzsch, etc., those who lead their neighbor to heresy and, hence, to sin, thanks to their greatness of spirit of obscure pedantry, so much so that they reach large number in hell. The answer was the following:

*

5. Such spiritual massacers of souls, having spiritually clouded their souls making them dead in the spirit, have dragged with them a multitude of people to hell; in the kingdom of spirits they arrive in the saddest conditions, and since they have lived as animals without God, their soul is here transformed entirely into that animal-form according to those animal vices to which they have indulged in the world. After a long and tormented life, they are sent back to Earth as idiots through those parents (also reincarnated) who, (in the previous life) have sinned against such creatures with scorn and lack of love [172].

6. Here you see that the imbeciles, or the cretins, are those people who in a previous life, with their superior erudition, with flashes of ingenuity in theaters and circuses, awakening lust in theatrical dances, etc., with their teachings, with lustful songs and dances of couples have plunged people's souls into hell in great numbers. Therefore do not mock the fools or cretins with their foolish and grinning attitude, for you have before you humans who once had the highest respect and the greatest reverence for the greatness of their uncommon spirit and skills - who however, instead of putting themselves at the service of their Divine Father, preferred to put themselves at the service of Satan, the prince of hell.

7. Their past arrogance, megalomania, dark capacity and their dominant elevation above others, are very deeply humiliated with such a reincarnation, whereby they are more animals than humans and serve as mockery and derision for young and old, but through this means, after a certain amount of time - in any case always a very long time that they spend again in the lower, more tormenting and completely dark hell - if they have come to understand where their sad fate comes from and have the good will to live according to Divine prescriptions, are enabled to be reincarnated into the world again with a normal intellect.

8. People who have misused their spiritual talents for the spiritual unhappiness of hundreds and sometimes thousands of their fellow humans, are therefore not to be envied because of their world-dominating talents and greatness, but already in this world they are to be deeply pitied, because you have in front of you the future idiots with their babble, grin and often diabolically evil soul. Indeed, so these humans punish themselves, this is their Karma, or the destiny that develops from this: as a curse of evil deeds and spiritual crimes committed one day to the next!

CHAPTER 57

The Bible is a spiritual Light from God

Graz, 25 July 1903

1. Those who rise up against the Bible and want to deprive it of it's spiritual honor, find there precisely those teachings that do not accord with their unspiritual characteristics, being loveless, arrogant, selfish and with animalistic vices! Hence their raging and clamoring against the Divine [nature] of this Book.

2. The Bible is the Book of the books of the world and is superior to all the writings of man, because the Word of Life is written there, while the word of man, if he turns against God, is total darkness and the most evident death of the spirit!

3. I, the Father Jesus, in a dictation dealing with the truth about the Bible, have already given in the year 1870, to your knowledge, the following: "Know that in the Bible, which I wanted to give as a permanent good for humanity and which was to remain for mankind unto an eternal course of action in relation to their destination, in the inner spiritual sense - despite the many changes in the interpretations, translations and explanations in the literal sense, of which constantly errant and fallible men have been guilty - it has remained completely intact and pure, because it cannot be touched. It in fact requires a spiritual man to discover the inner spiritual meaning of the Bible.

*

57.1 Scholarly Science and God's Wisdom

Graz, 25 July 1903

4. Therefore, let us not be deceived by the scholars of the world, since with their knowledge of natural science, one cannot penetrate the spirit and life of the Divine Word of the Bible. On the contrary, one must proceed from Above through Divine clarification, or Divine illumination - and since certain scholars with their critical fury extinguish the Light of the spirit themselves, they do not see the wood because of the trees and preach their spiritual blindness as the light of the world, presenting as nonsense the Divine Word, in which is the Spirit, the Light, the Strength and the Life coming from God. The word of Paul is clearly fulfilled in them in the 1st letter to the Corinthians 2:14, where we read: "The natural man does not accept the things of the Spirit of God; for him they are foolishness and he cannot understand them, because they must be grasped only spiritually".

*

57.2 The Jews were initially Elohists and only later became Jehovists

Graz, 25 July 1903

5. There are certain scholars of the secular world who proclaim, exaggeratedly bragging, that they have found evidence that the Jews (present-day Hebrews) originally worshiped Elohim and only later came to Jehovah. Elohim, however, according to their linguistic notions, means "heroes" or "gods", from which it would appear that the Jews were originally pagans and devoted to polytheism, and their monotheism or worship of one God would derive from their own culture, hence that they would slowly come from polytheism to a Jehovah-God, and thus they themselves would have purified and simplified their religion.

6. But those (scholars) are in great error, since Elohim, in the primordial Hebrew language, mean neither heroes nor gods, but 'Power of God' (the etymology of Elohim is in the book: "Christ, His coming and His return." [173]), or Holy Spirit, whose Name, as already demonstrated, appears quite often in the Bible, for 'Christ'. On the other hand, Jehovah, in the primordial Hebrew language, means "Father", therefore still "Christ", on which in the book "The Holy Trinity" [174] a fundamental clarification is given with this research. From this, everyone will see that there are no two kinds of God's teachings in the Bible, namely the early Elohists and later Jehovists, but that the erroneous teaching of the scholars rests on their ignorance about the language and on the defamation of critics and on their hatred of the Jews.

7. Likewise, they report, delighting in the evil of others, that in the Bible is often spoken of God's wrath, while elsewhere it is stated: "God is Love". However, anger, punishment and love do not fit, but they do not understand the word "wrath of God", because it is a response that means "the fervor of Love in God" - because God is neither angry nor vindictive, and it cannot be, because I Myself have given man the freedom to act according to his will. Nevertheless, I am the absolute Father of mankind, and in My education, through the fervor of Love, I must defend the Divine Order, as the earthly father defends his children, so that they do not go to ruin and, through ugly vices, create their own disaster.

8. Thus even the critics who want to eliminate God, experience My Divine Love and Patience despite their presumption against Me, although they should really be punished right away, by means of which they would come to understanding and be preserved from hell which they certainly will not miss, because people, with their life and their work in this world, build Heaven or hell for beyond the grave. Of course, Heaven and hell exist only in man's state of mind, and from this follow joys and enjoyment, or anger and torments, but they exist as an inevitable reward for life and working according to My Laws or against them.

*

57.3 Spiritual darkness as punishment for the critics of God's Word

9. It is peculiar that these critics who believe themselves to be scholars, do not seek in the Bible the Doctrine of eternal life, but only the verses and words incomprehensible to them from which they want to enlighten the world out of their spiritual death, their profound spiritual darkness. But the Light of God does not touch such people, but touches the humble and those fervent in love, and therefore here My joyful call comes true: "I praise you, Lord of Heaven and Earth, for having revealed these superior things of the Spirit to the humble and the simple, but you have hidden them from the wise and the intelligent "[Matt 11.25; Luke 10.21].

10. This declaration I expressed as Jesus, is a central Sun coming from the Love of God, given for those rational people who must not seek the salvation of their soul in the criticisms of the scholars and in their false prophetism!

*

57.4 Christians according to the letter of the Bible

Graz, 25 July 1903

11. How true My observation is, you can grasp from the book "The Holy Trinity" (chap. 5:23), after I explained the Essence of My Divinity so misunderstood, I uttered the following response to all of Christianity : "To the millions of readers of Sacred Scripture and to the many millions of spiritual obscurantists, I, Jesus, ask: 'Is one single concept right according to your material suppositions? No! Not even one! Everything you have thought, believed, written and taught so far about God, is nonsense!"

12. Can there be a word more bitter and full of reproaches than this word that I, your God and Father in Jesus, have cried out to the world? How can men and women with their false prophecy present themselves and subsist before Me, Christ, the eternal Divine Truth, if they do not walk the way to eternal Life that I Myself have enlightened and initiated with the fundamental Flame of My Paternal Love?

13. Christian Theosophy is the central school of the authentic doctrine of Christ for those people who want to become children of God, since only this - and no other Doctrine of faith in the world - is dictated and given by Myself, Jesus Christ, and it alone is established by God self as the religion of Love of the Millennial Kingdom of God on Earth. All other religions will eventually be absorbed into Christian Theosophy and therefore disappear from the world. Those who listen to and welcome it, can be considered happy by living and acting accordingly, because there will no longer be any hell for them.

14. To My son Schumi, when he sought the truth through faith-filled prayer, the baptism of the Spirit was given as a Pentecostal gift, as once to the apostles. Therefore, you too, dear children, seek the Truth - since only in Christian Theosophy and in no other religion in the world, is it given to you purely and Divinely. Amen!



FOOTNOTES

[1] The reference is to the work communicated to Jakob Lorber who received 37 books in Graz from 1840 to 1864.

[2] The clouds of heaven are the actual words dictated by God in all the books of the New Revelation; - Mt. 26,63-64; - Mc. 14.62.

[3] Cuma: city in Campania where the cave of the Sibyl of Cuma is preserved, very famous in antiquity and also mentioned by Virgil in the Aeneid.

[4] An acrostic is a poem or other linguistic expression in which the initial letters or syllables or words of each verse form a name or phrase.

[5] On the sibyllic books and their destruction, I read in Ritter v. Vesme, History of Spiritualism, Volume 1. [Schumi]

[6] From Ritter v. Vesme from the book “Gesch. des Spiritismus "vol. 1. p. 365, Publio Virgilio Marone, (born in 70 in Andes, a village near Mantua, † 22 September 19 BC in Brindisi); he finished the eclogues between 27-25 BC.

[7] The virgin: Dike, daughter of Zeus and Themis (goddess of justice), who lived on Earth in the golden age under the dominion of Saturn (Cronus, father of Zeus), but with the beginning of the age iron is said to have fled to heaven, where she was called Astrea (the starry virgin) or Virgio (the virgin) as a constellation.

[8] Lucina: nickname given in Rome to Juno, commonly known as Diana (sister of Apollo), goddess of the moon, hunting and nature, as protector of women in labor, therefore called for the protection of small children.

[9] Asinius Pollione Gaius: (76 BC - 5 AD) Roman politician and writer, partisan of Caesar then of Antonio, a friend of Virgil who dedicated the fourth eclogue to him.

[10] Eclogue: poetic composition with a rural or pastoral subject, mostly written in the form of a dialogue: the eclogues of Virgil.

[11] Josephus: (Jerusalem 37-100), a well-known Pharisee, historian of great importance for Jewish history. Taken prisoner to Rome for having participated in the rebellion against the Romans, he was freed by Vespasian.

[12] John's baptism was an outward ceremonial display for the baptized to initiate repentance for the remission of sins.

[13] Fictitious authority: The title of Publius Lentulus was of patrician senator (as judge), and not of governor (erroneously spelled later, in the copy of James) who at the time of Pilate held the highest office of legislative power in Judea , while the governor Pilate had the juridical office for the executive power, which notoriously must submit to the legislative power.

[14] About the life of the character Publius Lentulus, husband of the sister of Pilate's wife, about 40 years later F. Schumi, through the medium Chico Xavier, was given an extensive revelation received through psychography (automatic writing), "Two thousand years ago ... "in which in chapter V it is said that this young patrician senator, while he was in Jerusalem, having received

from Jesus the healing of his little daughter sick with leprosy, wrote a letter to the emperor in Rome on the personality of Jesus from the strictly point of view human, having known Him personally. A letter, however, which was not reported in that text, making it impossible for a comparison.

[15] Preases Hierosolimitanorum: Superintendent, or more properly, the 'legate of the emperor', that is, a special envoy of his as if he were carrying out his direct will.

[16] The title of governor was an error of interpretation in the preparation of the copy of the letter from Fr Lentulo.

[17] Roman Indiction: 14-year period of the Julian calendar established in Rome starting from 313 AD. for tax review.

[18] The original Latin of this sentence was buried under the rubble during the destruction of Jerusalem in the year 70. This copy was dictated on June 13, 1904 by the Father Jesus through F. Schumi.

[19] Pontius Pilate was governor from the beginning of 29 to 36 AD. (23 Nov.)

[20] It is the Palatine Chapel in the Royal Palace of Caserta.

[21] The date of 1280 is communicated by the Lord, which is the correct one. So it's our calendar that's 2 years wrong!

[22] The 17th year of Emperor Tiberius would be in the year 31, while Jesus died historically in 33. Only the chronological records brought by the historical researcher Brinkmayer prove that our Christian calendar begins 2 years late - therefore Christ is born two years earlier. So there would be 4151 years from Adam to Christ, and after Christ we are this year instead of 1904, 1906.

[23] The emperor Tiberius Claudius Nero (16/11/42 BC - 16/03/37 AD) ruled from 17/09/14 to 16/03/37, but the chronology implemented by the Gregorian calendar only occurred in 523 through the monk Dionysius the Small and implemented between the eighth and ninth centuries.

[24] The Father Jesus tells me that Josephus finished his book "The Jewish Antiquities in the year 83, and yet from the chronicles of the time it is reported that they were written in 72.

[25] According to the information provided by the Father to Schumi.

[26] John 19:30; on the other hand, Luke 23:46 incorrectly mentions the sixth word instead of the seventh;

[27] Holy is wrong because no one is holy except God.

[28] So Jerusalem was called because of the ark of the covenant which was erected there.

[29] Luke did not learn the note of him among the witnesses of the time until the year 50, which is why the previous Roman information remained so inadequate (according to the explanation of his father Jesus).

[30] Apology of Tertullian 21,20; 44 - book 9, chap. VI, 45) St. Dionysius, book II, letter 8.

[31] Ritter von Vesme reference taken from a false report taken from a quotation from Julius the

African, quoted by Eusebius. [Greek chronicles, page 188]

[32] The quote was given by Julius the African, led by Eusebius. - Greek Chronicles, page 188; 47) see also 46 and 48) - Christology vol. II.

[33] The word PAN is to be understood here in Sanskrit-Slavic as "Lord" and "God".

[34] Etymology: science that has as its object the study of the origin and derivation of words in a language; it is an essential part of linguistics.

[35] The Talmud is essentially an immense explanation and adaptation of the Torah, that is, of the biblical law. In fact, if the latter is called the written Torah, the Talmud is also called the oral Torah (although it is a great book!), As it is a transcription of the oral interpretation of the masters.

[36] They confessed for the faith and not for the fire. Pliny also voted in favor of this declaration (Ep. 10.97 ad Trajanum: "I asked them if they were Christians and they confessed it three times, while threatening them with punishment")

[37] Then he refers to “Hist. 5.5 ":" Between them there is stubborn cohesion and courteous participation; hostile hatred against all the others ». - This grave accusation is usually explained by the fact that they abstained from performances, feasts, sacrificial meals and the like. However, the reason is deeper, that is, in their contempt for all other peoples, which John the Baptist reproaches for example (Mt 3: 9). According to John 18:28 the Jewish leaders did not enter Pilate's apartment for fear of being defiled. Their hatred of the Samaritans is well known due to the difference in religion. At the time of Tacitus and Pliny, however, Jews and Christians were confused by total ignorance, and the accusations of atrocities that they should have perpetrated during their agapi (loving feasts) were obviously false.

[38] Nicomedia: capital of the historical region of Asia Minor, overlooking the Black Sea, now called "Ismid".

[39] Pliny the younger died around 113, Hermes III mentions it in the 99th essay by Theodor Mommsen: "Pliny died before 114 in Bithynia or immediately after returning from the province, on 11 July in Rome, 113 years after the death of Jesus ».

[40] (Schumi): To those to whom such an intervention of God in the words of this writer may seem strange, let it be revealed that all my works are done under the influence and dictation of the Father Jesus, even if it often appears as if it comes directly from me. I do not write a religious book without the will, the questioning, the evaluation and the collaboration of the Father Jesus.

[41] This also appears through Ritter Von Mesme, in “Gesch. D. Spir. 1.507; - 3.

[42] The letter cited below that the Father Jesus dictated to me is found in the book “Spiritism vol. 1 p. 507. (Schumi)

[43] It should be noted that Constantine was not kind to the Arians and Catholics (says the Father Jesus).

[44] Tillemont Louis Sebastien (Paris 1637-1698), French scholar. He wrote works on the history of the Church of the first six centuries.

[45] Sozomenus Hermia (5th century), Greek-Christian historian, author of an ecclesiastical history from 324 to 439.

[46] The cross that had not appeared to the army, but Constantine told the army that it had appeared to him.

[47] (historical information) - It is the evening of December 17, 1826, an extraordinary event is about to set the small town of Migné in great turmoil. The population of the village and its surroundings gathered to erect a mission cross. At about 5 pm, as the crowd listened to the preacher's speech, a mysterious cross appeared in the sky. Contrary to the cross that had just been erected, this was very large, regular, bright and positioned horizontally. It remained like this for about half an hour, oriented from East to West, stretched above the crowd that was gathered in front of the church. About four thousand people attended the prodigious event, including the parish priests of Migné and Saint-Porchaire, the mayor of Migné and two soldiers from the Poitiers gendarmerie, who will later give public testimony, also before the commission appointed by the Bishop.

[48] Misleading atmospheric reflections. On this atmospheric phenomenon there is an entire revelation of the Lord dictated to Jakob Lorber in the book "Gifts from Heaven" first volume chap. 63 of 18 October 1840. These are original references of the German texts.

[49] Sophism: a quirky argument apparently true and logical, but substantially false.

[50] In the revelations to Max Seltmann after 1934, Zebedee's wife is referred to as Salome. (See book XXII) - "John the apostle in his youth with Jesus" in chap. 1.3.

[51] Mark: here we do not mean the son of Peter, author of the Gospel of Mark, but probably another person who lived around 130.

[52] Apodictically: which concerns what is demonstrable.

[53] Patmos: Greek island in the Aegean Sea. An extensive revelation about Giovanni's life on this island was given to Anita Wolf in 1975, entitled "The Prisoner".

[54] Brahmins: Indian priests of the god Brama; these priests belong to the most privileged caste in India

[55] About l'Rabbas, the character was explained in 1864 by Jakob Lorber in the book "Explanations to the biblical texts" chapter 6.

[56] Joseph was the son of Jacob, surnamed Eli of Nazareth; - Matthew 1.16; - Luke 3,23.

[57] "The childhood of Jesus" dictated to Jakob Lorber 1843/1844.

[58] The Rabbi learned this information in chap. 13.54-56 in the year 56 on May 5th.

[59] Joses (Joel): Joel, was the eldest son of Joseph's first wife, who died in the year 20 at the age of 58.

[60] The genealogy of Joseph is in Mt 1.1-15.

[61] Poor relatives: these are three young girls and five orphan boys taken into custody by Joseph because they were entrusted by Quirino Cirenio. (see "The Gospel of James" chap. 107,21)

[62] Mt. 10,34-38: «Do not think that I have come to bring peace on Earth. I did not come to bring peace, but the sword. Because I have come to divide the son from the father, the daughter from the mother, the daughter-in-law from the mother-in-law; and man's enemies will be his

family. Whoever loves father and mother more than Me is not worthy of Me; and whoever loves his son or daughter more than Me, is not worthy of Me. And whoever does not take his cross and does not follow Me, is not worthy of Me ».

[63] Lk. 14,26-27: «If anyone comes to me and does not hate his father, mother, wife, children, brothers, sisters and even his own life, he cannot be my disciple. Whoever does not carry his own cross and does not come after me cannot be my disciple ”.

[64] The book "Annunciations" has not yet been found among the books of F. Schumi. [Editor's note]

[65] Matthew: here we mean the true Matthew, whose original Gospel is found in India, and not Matthew-l'Rabbas, that is, his Gospel that has come down to us, which however is not reliable in many points.

[66] Presbyter: originally, an elder who was entrusted with the task of governing the Christian community to which he belonged.

[67] Papia of Hierapolis: Greek Christian writer. Little is known of his life. Disciple of John the Apostle, companion of Polycarp, he was bishop of Hierapolis of Phrygia. He wrote around 130 an exegetical work in five books, "Explanations of the Revelations of the Lord", of which only fragments remain.

[68] Some references that seem to come from Schumi, in fact, always originate from the Lord, to direct the reader in the search for historical sources. This, as reported, is found in: “Sacred Relics” edited by M.J.Routh, quoted by Cruice in his pamphlet: “Some Recent Discussions” of 1858.

[69] The story of Theophilus (Ruben) was revealed to us through the mystic Max Seltmann in 1932 (Book XII - Theophilus Story). N.d.r.

[70] Jurisconsult: who is learned in law or jurist.

[71] Referred to in Haeres, book IV ch. 1.97.

[72] This historical annotation serves to confirm that the Gospel of Luke was not derived from indications of Paul who would have communicated them to Luke, since already previously, Clement from 138, he had given many written indications quoting the Gospel of Luke without any reference to Paolo.

[73] [Lk. 19:27]: "Meanwhile, bring my enemies here, those who did not want me to reign over them, and cut their throats in my presence."

[74] Homeric: from Homer: which is typical of Homer's characters, such as those of the heroes of Homer, the author of the Iliad.

[75] Luke, 9,27; Mt 16.28; Mc. 9,1: "... there are some present here, who will not die before having seen the kingdom of God come with power".

[76] Eclecticism: in philosophy, it is a system that results from a set of different doctrines, harmoniously connected to each other, in this it differs from 'syncretism', in which there is no such coordination.

[77] This is Anselm Huttembrenner, composer and musician, also called 'zealous', brother of Andreas, mayor of Graz who, together with three other friends of Jakob Lorber (Karl Gottfried

von Leitner, and two others of whom only the initials: D. and S. - [perhaps Samuda]), followed the mystic in his receptions from 1840.

[78] The teaching of 'justification' is a compendium of three books dictated to Schumi, of which in the first 'Justification', this concept is reiterated as it must be understood in the truth, a concept that Luther has wrongly indicated, and then with the two subsequent lives in the afterlife of Luther himself and Swedenborg in order to demonstrate with obvious examples, how this important concept was to be understood. [n.d.r.]

[79] The reference is in "Acts" chap. 15, since for eighteen years the apostles headed by Peter demanded circumcision before granting baptism to new Christians.

[80] See the book “The dr. Martin Luther in the afterlife "

[81] In baptism: subject treated in the six booklets "Christ and the Church".

[82] This prophecy on the new Bible that Jesus Jehovah directed me to write, he also did in chap. 21 of the book "The Justification"

[83] All the following news reported by Schumi, were communicated-inspired to him by the Lord, after having subsequently verified the content with appropriate research, so it is as if Jesus were speaking directly.

[84] Saccenteria: being pedantic; exhibition, presumptuous and unpleasant display of one's knowledge.

[85] It was in the year 919 that Jehovah was with the Adamites, that they moved to appear for their great love, where He spoke to them for a long time through the body of an angel, teaching them and staying in their company; for God can only be moved to appear through great love. (see "The Government of the Family" communicated to Jakob Lorber - ed.)

[86] Ref .: John Urquhart, “Recent Discoveries and the Bible” chap.1,30; / ref.:Graßmann, “Place and time of the biblical history of the Old Testament”, p. 37.

[87] Sündflut and not Sintflut: that is, partial and non-universal flood, as it is correctly written by the researchers, because there was no universal flood. This is how the distorted biblical word does not bring the necessary enlightenment.

[88] Georgia: is a state on the shores of the Black Sea, located on the dividing line that separates Europe from Asia, considered from the historical-cultural point of view as belonging to Eastern Europe.

[89] “Graßmann”. Old Testament, p. 37; describes Gen. 1,58 p. 292. - “Urquhart” 1st vol. of "Recent Discoveries and the Bible".

[90] Here we mean the spirit of Raphael, being the little angel Karmata-Lorber a son of Raphael-Agralea, representatives of the House of Love, as indicated in the book "Karmatha" revealed to Anita Wolf in 1951. [editor's note]

[91] As it is known: [Genesis 5,24] - the detailed life of Enoch and of all the patriarchs was told to us in the work "The Government of the Family of God" revealed to J. Lorber in 1840 whose kidnapping of Enoch is in vol. 3 chap. 117.20. [n.d.r.]

[92] This number refers to around 1900.

[93] Cambyses II, son of Cyrus the Great, reigned from 529 to 522 BC.

[94] Strabo: (Amasia, Pontus, before 60 BC 20 AD), Greek historian and geographer. He wrote a historical work that has not come down to us, in continuation of the stories of Polybius (Historical Memoirs), and a geographical work of 17 books (Geography), of great importance for the historical and geographical information on many regions of antiquity.

[95] The deportation of the Egyptians for 40 years not to be confused with the deportation of the Jews (Jews) of Jerusalem for 70 years always by the hand of Nebuchadnezzar with the story of Daniel (see "Chronicles 36.11-21; Daniel 1.1 -2). [n.d.r.]

[96] Indigenous: said in a person who is originally from a given country.

[97] Ali Bey Al-Kabir: (Georgia, 1728 - Cairo, 1773) was an Egyptian sultan. A modest slave in Egypt, he ascended with a fulminating career of rebellion, proclaiming himself an autonomous ruler. During his five-year reign (1768-1773) he gave an expansionist push by conquering Syria.

[98] Assyria: (Anterior Asia), an ancient region along the course of the Upper Tigris.

[99] Cadea: historical region of Mesopotamia. Inhabited in the century. XI BC from the population of the Chaldean Semites, it corresponded to Babylon.

[100] Titus Flavius Vespasian, Roman emperor under whom Jerusalem was destroyed.

[101] Greek Septuagint: it is the version of the Seventy (from the Latin name Septuaginta: also indicated with LXX) is the version of the Old Testament in Greek.

[102] See revelation to J. Lorber of 1840-1842 "The Government of the Family" vol. 2 chap. 3 and following.

[103] See "The Holy Trinity" chap. 4.19.

[104] The doctrine of karma and reincarnation, or that the departed repeatedly enter the flesh on Earth, is a genuine original Christian doctrine, which is explained in the book: "Christian Theosophy";

[105] The first promise made to Adam refers to Genesis 3,15, that is the reconciliation of the Lord with the first couple created after the fall, which took place 3 years after the creation of Adam. (see rev. to J.Lorber "The Government of the Family of God" vol. 1 chap. 9-10)

[106] Gen. 49.10: "The scepter will not be taken away from Judah, nor the staff of command between his feet, until he comes to whom it belongs and to whom the obedience of the peoples is due".

[107] Ambrosia: according to the belief of the ancients, the food of the gods that gave them immortality.

[108] Paraclete: comforter; it is an epithet of the Holy Spirit.

[109] The story of Abraham was revealed to Anita Wolf in 1956 under the title "The Patriarch".

[110] The prophecy is found in the "Gospel of James", also called "Childhood of Jesus", in chap. 152.16-18. The work was written by James, the half-brother of Jesus, a work that was lost and subsequently dictated in 1843 to Jakob Lorber.

[111] According to Tacitus it is Quirinus Sulpitius, who was delegated to Syria by Augustus to carry out the evaluation of the property and of which Luke 2,1-2 and the Jewish Josephus speaks in the "Antiquities" 18th book, 1st chapter. The spelling of the Greco-Lutheran Bible Kyrenios in Cyrenius is nothing more than the distorted spelling of the original Latin Quirinus which, according to Tacitus, is the only correct pronunciation. Therefore, for Tacitus there was never a Cyrene but it was Quirinus Sulpitius, the governor of Syria. The Vulgate has Quirinus, not Cyrenius. Yet, in the work "The Gospel of James" dictated to Jakob Lorber, he is referred to as Quirino Cyrenius.

[112] David reigned 1055 - 1015 before Christ.

[113] The childhood of Jesus: see previous note.

[114] Another great apostle was John.

[115] The Hebrew Bible has always quoted Elohim and Jehovah as it was in the original of Moses, revealing subsequent translation errors in the Bible.

[116] This term means: comparing, equating and transforming natural substances.

[117] The Divinity in Me: see the explanation revealed to Antoine Grossheim in 1863 “The Seven Words of Jesus on the Cross” - chap. 3.4.

[118] [Malachi 3,1-24]: [1] Behold, I will send my messenger to prepare the way before me and immediately the Lord, whom you seek, will enter his temple; the angel of the covenant that you long for. "Here he comes" - says the Lord of hosts. [2] Who will endure the day of his coming? Who will resist the appearance of him? He is like the fire of the smelter and like the lye of the launderers. [3] he will Sit to melt and purify; he will purify the sons of Levi, refine them like gold and silver, so that they can offer the Lord an oblation according to justice. [4] Then the offering of Judah and Jerusalem will be pleasing to the Lord as in days of old, as in years past. [5] I will approach you for judgment and I will be a ready witness against enchanters, against adulterers, against perjurers, against those who defraud the wages of the worker, against the oppressors of the widow and the orphan and against those who make wrong to the stranger. "They do not fear me" - says the Lord of hosts. [6] I am the Lord, I do not change; you, sons of Jacob, are not yet at the end. [7] Since the time of your fathers you have turned away from my precepts, you have not kept them. "Return to me and I will return to you" - says the Lord of hosts. But you say: "How are we to return?" [8] Can a man defraud God? Yet you defraud me and go on saying: "How did we defraud you?". - "In the tithes and in the first fruits". [9] You have already been struck by the curse and you are still defrauding me, you, the whole nation! [10] Bring the whole tithes into the temple treasury, that there may be food in my house; then put me to the test in this - says the Lord of hosts - if I do not open the windows of heaven and pour out superabundant blessings on you. [11] I will keep the devouring insects back so that they do not destroy the fruits of the earth and the vine is not barren in the field - says the Lord of hosts. [12] "Happy", all nations will tell you, because you will be a land of delight - says the Lord of hosts. [13] "Harsh are your speeches against me" - says the Lord. And you go saying: «What have we against you?». [14] You affirmed: «It is useless to serve God: what advantage have we received from having kept his commandments or from having walked in mourning before the Lord of hosts? [15] We must instead proclaim blessed the proud who, while doing evil, multiply and, while provoking God, remain unpunished ". [16] Then the God-fearing ones spoke among themselves. The Lord gave ear and listened to them: a book of remembrances was written before him for those who fear him and honor his name. [17] "They will become" - says the Lord of hosts - «my property on the day that I prepare. I will have compassion on them as the father has compassion on the son who serves him ». [18] Then you will be converted and you will see the difference between the just and the wicked, between those who serve God and those who

do not. [19] Behold, indeed, the day is about to come as hot as an oven. Then all the proud and all those who commit injustice will be like straw; that day, coming, he will set them on fire - says the Lord of hosts - so as to leave them neither root nor sprout. [20] For you, on the other hand, followers of my name, the sun of righteousness will rise with beneficial rays, and you will leap out like calves from the stable. [21] You shall trample the wicked to ashes under the soles of your feet in the day that I prepare - says the Lord of hosts. [22] Keep in mind the law of my servant Moses, to whom I ordered on Horeb, statutes and regulations for all Israel. [23] Behold, I will send the prophet Elijah before the great and terrible day of the Lord arrives, [24] so that he may convert the hearts of the fathers to the children and the hearts of the children to the fathers; so that when I come I don't hit the country with extermination.

[119] Who Michael-Michael had been is revealed through Lorber in 1863 in the "Great Gospel of John" vol. 9 / chap. 119.

[120] Atanasiana: from Athanasius of Alexandria (Alexandria 293-373), patriarch of this city and doctor of the Church; staunch defender of orthodoxy against Arianism, which he helped to condemn in the Council of Nicaea (325).

[121] This concept is taken up in the book "Christian Theosophy" in chap. 106/4 paragraph 9.

[122] Original sin: in the spiritual sense here not only Adam's sin of disobedience is to be understood, but its root is rooted in primordial sin, or Sadhana's sin of rebellion from which the so-called original sin then came! [n.d.r.]

[123] A further confirmation of this can be found in an unpublished work given to an anonymous author / author of the early 1900s entitled "Autobiography (of the Passion) of Christ" in which in chap. 1 “The sin of Adam and Eve” the same concept is reiterated.

[124] This referred to Judas of Kariot (scariot or iscariot) who was a clerk at the table of the apostles.

[125] As a disciple of the teaching of the Spirit of Christ.

[126] Edom: from the ruthlessness of Pilate's court.

[127] Bozra: dressed in the royal red cloak.

[128] Press: I alone suffered for salvation.

[129] Oblation: in the liturgy of the Mass, the offering of bread and wine. From the Latin oblatus "to offer".

[130] Etymology: science that has as its object the study of the origin and derivation of words in a language; it is an essential part of linguistics.

[131] On earthquakes see revelation to Jakob Lorber “Testimonies from nature” chap. 18 and 19.

[132] This two-volume book, “Kundgaben” (revelations or proclamations or announcements) is not yet in our possession.

[133] This concept is beautifully expressed in Emanuel Swedenborg's book entitled "Conjugal love".

[134] By correspondence, the Father as magnetism and the Son as electricity, or the Father as

fire and the Son as heat, that is, Love and Wisdom in One. [n.d.r.]

[135] The date of the resurrection is confirmed in the book "Christian Theosophy" in chapter 10 paragraph 11.

[136] Plenipotence: who has full powers.

[137] Axiom: truth so evident that it does not need to be demonstrated.

[138] Efrata: it was the ancient name of Bethlehem.

[139] This book is not in our possession.

[140] Apodictic: which does not need to be proved; self evident.

[141] Sic: Latin, adverb, thus; it is used in brackets when, by reporting in writing a passage of some text or words of others, you want to indicate that the transcription is textual, to point out a writing error not to be attributed to the printer, or an error of evaluation or concept.

[142] Renitence: who refuses to comply with the suggestions of others, rebelliousness, reluctance, resentment, reluctance, hostility, refusal.

[143] Refers to the Scottish-born British pastor Dowie John Alexander (* 1847 - † 1907). After having founded a sect of healers in Australia, in 1888 he went to America where in 1896 he founded the "Catholic Church of Zion", which in 1901 gave birth to a city, Sion City, on the banks of Michigan. He was deposed by his followers because he was blamed for despotism, hypocrisy and polygamy.

[144] (Schumi): Dowie and the Swedenborghians, despite Paul's very clear words to the Corinthians and the Romans, deny that the Spirit of God dwells in every man. This fact, that the Spirit of God dwells in every man, was confirmed to me by the Father in response to my fervent plea.

[145] Rogue: unscrupulous person who acts with arrogance looking only to his own advantage.

[146] It is known that in Catholic editions the translation of the term 'love' is 'charity'; it is evident that the ancient choice of the fathers of the Church was out of interest. [n.d.t.]

[147] The Lord refers to Tsarist Russia and then to the Soviet Empire. (Editor's note)

[148] These numbers refer to the early 1900s.

[149] Delitzsch Friedrich (* Erlangen 1850 - † Langenschwalbach 1922), German philologist and archaeologist, dedicated to Assyriology, supported the derivation of the Old Testament from Babylonian myths.

[150] The dates, here, were given to me according to the indication of the Father Jesus.

[151] Nietzsche Friedrich Wilhelm (* 1844 - † 1900): German thinker and philosopher. His thought is an exaltation of vital values against any form of transcendentism; with the morality of the superman and the will to power, he overturned all traditional values, especially Christian ethics. He died mad.

[152] Susa: ancient city of Iran. It was the capital of ancient Elam and the winter residence of the Persian emperors. Important archaeological finds, Elamites, Assyrians and Babylonians,

including the stele with the code of Hammurabi, now in the Louvre.

[153] Stele: marble or stone slab with inscriptions and decorations, having the value of a funeral or commemorative monument or even a votive object.

[154] Hottentots: indigenous people belonging to a population of southern Africa of which few survivors remain today.

[155] Papuans or Papuans: who belong to Papua or New Guinea.

[156] Nippur: ancient Babylonian city of Mesopotamia, in the current locality of Niffar. Some excavations have revealed temples and archives with numerous cuneiform tablets.

[157] The day of the solstice: it is thanks to this explanation that we understand why the oldest buildings of temples still existing were built with walls or certain windows / holes directed in line with the position of the Sun in the solstice.

[158] Marduk: Babylonian deity, to whom the attributes of the Sumerian god Enlil were reported; ordinator of the world, he overcame the monster Tiamat, with whose body he formed Heaven and Earth.

[159] he Not Indo Germanic, but must be called Indo European.

[160] Saccenteria: being pedantic; exhibition, presumptuous and unpleasant display of one's knowledge.

[161] Dillmann August, German orientalist and linguist 1823-1894. He mainly dealt with the Ethiopian language; we owe him the catalog of Ethiopian manuscripts in the libraries of London and Oxford.

[162] Moses lived in Thebes. The moral teachings of Babylon and Egypt were more or less the same, hence the same law;

[163] (Published in German by Spliedt, published by Max Kielmann in Stuttgart)

[164] See the 1840 revelation to Jakob Lorber "The Government of the Family of God" - vol. 3 chap. 11

[165] Darwin: father of the evolution of the species through natural selection.

[166] This is the greatest work communicated to Jakob Lorber “The great Gospel of John”.

[167] About Jakob Lorber in 1951 his spiritual life before his incarnation was revealed through Anita Wolf, through which we are informed that he was an angel (Karmata) of the "house of Love" that is the house of Raphael, the representative of the God's characteristic of Love. (see "Karmata") [editor's note]

[168] At the time of Schumi (1900) some works by G. Mayerhofer had not yet been published, such as "Signs of the time", and "Giardini in festa".

[169] More information on this can be found in the magazine “Amore” (Die Liebe) n. II, chap. 33.

[170] Tiara: tall, stiff, cone-shaped hat, worn in ancient times by oriental priests and princes.

[171] These topics are extensively treated in the book "Christian Theosophy".

[172] In this case the maxim is applied: "Do not do to others what you would not want them to do to you!".

[173] Book not in our possession.

[174] “The Holy Trinity”: is one of Schumi's first books, n. 37, printed in 1901.

[175] Libation: among ancient peoples, a religious ceremony which consisted of sprinkling a few drops of liquid (wine or milk) on the altar as a votive offering to the gods

[176] Beak: male goat, billy goat.

Table of Contents

Historical dates quoted....2

PART 1....4

Proofs that no other God besides Jesus has ever existed....4

CHAPTER 1....5

REASONS FOR THE ORIGIN OF THIS WORK AS GOD'S JUDGEMENT IN THE WORLD....5

1.1 Words of Eternal Truth and the Children of God....7

1.2 Caution and warning by the apostle John, as he understood the Divine Word of Prophecy....8

CHAPTER 2....10

Evidence that Jesus confessed Himself as Christ or Messiah....10

CHAPTER 3....12

Synoptic and Synchronistic Sources....12

CHAPTER 4....13

Prophecies from Pagan, Jewish and Christian writers about Jesus Christ....13

4.1 Prophecy of the Cibylle of Eritrea....13

4.2 Prophecy about the Future names of Jesus through the Cibylle of Eritrea....14

4.3 Vergil's Prophecy about the coming of Jesus Christ....14

(From Ritter v. Vesme, Gesch. des Spiritismus 1, 365, Publius Vergilius Maro, born 70 in Andes, in a village near Mantua, † 22 September 19 BC in Brundusium (Brindisi); he ended the eclogues between 27-25 before Christ)....14

4.4 Reports of Roman Historians about the Coming of the Messiah from the Prophecies....15

CHAPTER 5....16

The Pharisee Josephus reports (in 72 AD) about the death of John the Baptist....16

CHAPTER 6....17

The Traditional Compilation of the description of the person of Christ....17

CHAPTER 7....20

A demonstration of incorrect transcriptions of the description of the figure of Christ....20

CHAPTER 8....23

The profile of the face of Jesus....23

CHAPTER 9....24

The Death Sentence by Pontius Pilate in year 33 on 25 March....24

CHAPTER 10....26

A further testimony in the year 72 about the work and death of Christ....26

CHAPTER 11....27

The Day of Christ's Death on March 25, 33 and the phenomena reported in the Gospels 27

CHAPTER 12....31

The prophecy of salvation through the names of the 10 first patriarchs....31

CHAPTER 13....32

Message from the Talmud about Christ's Death....32

CHAPTER 14....32

The Stoning of Jacob, Joseph's youngest Son....32

CHAPTER 15....33

Year 64: The first Persecution of Christians under Emperor Nero....33

CHAPTER 16....35

The Rapid Spread of Christianity in Asia Minor....35

I.6.1 Trajan's answer to Pliny....36

16.2 Jesus gives clarification about sure sources....36

CHAPTER 17....38

Clarifications on the apparitions of the cross....38
17.1. The false appearance of the cross to Emperor Constantine the Great....38
17.2. Some historical quotations about the false appearances of the cross....39
17.3. A true apparition of the cross....40
17.4. An apparition of the cross to F. Schumi....40
CHAPTER 18....42
About forced faith....42
CHAPTER 19....43
The times of the books of the prophets....43
19.1. Periods of activity of the prophets before Christ....43
19.2. The oldest known Bible of the Year 735 before Christ....44
CHAPTER 20....45
Research and news about the time of the origin of the gospels John....45
2o.1 About the Gospel of John....45
20.2 About the Gospel of Matthew, the real one that disappeared....46
20.3 Another Gospel, which has become the original, by another Matthew called 'La Rabbas', and it's contradictions....46
20.4 About the Gospel of Mark....48
20.5 John the Presbyter....49
20.6 Papias....49
20.7 The Asia Minor priest Aristion (year 120)....49
20.8. About Luke....50
CHAPTER 21....52
Clarification of Gospel Criticism....52
21.1 Ironic remarks for critics of the Gospels....55
CHAPTER 22....57
Criticism of Father's Dictates....57
22.1 Renewed warning to critics of the new Word....58
CHAPTER 23....59
Father Jesus' Divine Will for the reading of the Bible....59
23.1. Comments on explanation of human errors....61
23.2 Qoutes of passages to reach the Light of Truth....62
CHAPTER 24....63
Proof that the Words of the Bible are Words of God....63
CHAPTER 25....66
Biblical Evidence of the Inner Word....66
CHAPTER 26....68
The Baptism of Fire of the Holy Spirit to have the Divine Word....68
CHAPTER 27....71
The origin of the Bible is lost and found in the chronicles of time....71
27.1 Territorial and historical evidence in Phoenicia about Tyre and Sidon....73
27.2 Territorial and historical demonstrations in Egypt about Thebes and Memphis....74
27.3 Prophecies about the land of Egypt....75
27.4 Territorial and historical evidence about Babylon....77
27.5 Territorial and historical demonstrations in Idumea, about the country of the Philistines and Cretans....78
27.6 Historical prophecies about some cities in the land of Israel, later fulfilled....78
CHAPTER 28....81
Schumi's comment on the presentation of the second part....81
PART 2....83
CHAPTER 29....83
Proof that Jesus was the Promised Messiah or Christ; The first Promise of the Redeemer

in Messiah....83
29.1 Prophecies about the Messiah by Jacob and Daniel....84
29.2 Prophecies about the Messiah's forerunner....84
29.3 Prophecies about the Circumstances about the Birth of the Messiah....84
29.4 Prophecies about the Messiah Who would be a great Prophet....84
29.5 Prophecies spoken by Jesus....85
29.6 Confirmation that Jesus was that great Prophet foretold by Moses....85
29.7 The Transfiguration on Mount Tabor....86
CHAPTER 30....87
Proof that Jesus Christ was the Son of God....87
30.1 Prove that the Son of God means the same as the Wisdom of God or the Word of God....88
30.2 Prove that Jesus Christ was God's Wisdom according to His Soul....90
30.3 Evidence that Jesus Christ is the Holy Spirit of God....92
CHAPTER 31....93
Melchizedek, king of Salem....93
CHAPTER 32....96
Emmanuel in the Messiah and the sufferings on the cross....96
32.2 The martyrdom of Jesus....97
32.3 About the coming of Jesus....99
32.4 About the Holy Trinity....101
CHAPTER 33....103
Supplement to the book "The Holy Trinity"....103
CHAPTER 34....107
A questionable Bible verse from the Bible translation of Martin Luther....107
CHAPTER 35....108
Jehovah as Jesus Christ....108
CHAPTER 36....112
The Spirit of Jesus Christ as the Spirit of God in man....112
CHAPTER 37....114
The reason for Jesus' sufferings....114
CHAPTER 38....118
Numerous biblical prophecies about the passion of Jesus....118
38.1 Prophecies about the seven words on the cross....118
38.2 Prophecies about the flagellation....118
38.3 Prophecies about the partitioning of robes, spear and legs....119
38.4 Prophecy about the Cornerstone....120
38.5 Prophecies about the victory of Jesus as Christ....120
38.6 Prophecy of the Resurrection....122
38.7 Prophecies about the effects and consequences of the appearance of the Messiah....123
CHAPTER 39....124
Prove that Jesus Christ is the Creator of the World....124
CHAPTER 40....125
Jesus as God and man and his Glorification and Deification....125
40.1 Magnetism and electricity is like Love and Wisdom....125
40.2 The body of Jesus was spiritualized and Mary was no longer a mother....127
40.3 The spiritual essentiality of Mary....128
40.4 About Transfiguration....129
40.5 About the Ascension....130
40.6 Christ as the Image of God....131
CHAPTER 41....132

Jesus, the Eternal....132
CHAPTER 42....134
Jesus, the King and Judge of the world....134
42.1 Christ is the Lord of Heaven and Earth....134
CHAPTER 43....135
Justification before God....135
43.1 The Works of Neighbourly Love....138
43.2 Prophecy to Protestants and Biblical Christians....139
CHAPTER 44....140
Teachings about Blood and Soul....140
CHAPTER 45....142
The Gospel of Love....142
CHAPTER 46....143
Prophecy about the brotherhood of man....143
PART 3....145
Jesus Christ according to His earthly origin and His Divine Word in the Holy Scripture. .145
CHAPTER 47....146
Events and conditions of recent times....146
47.1 Explanations of the Bible misunderstood by Delitzsch....147
47.2 Clarifications against Delitzsch....148
47.3 The origin of the Earth and of man....149
47.4 The pre-Adamites....149
47.5 The origin, the names and the cause of the rise of the doctrine on the gods....149
CHAPTER 48....152
Schumi's invitation to recognize the Bible as the Holy Word....152
CHAPTER 49....153
Delitzsch's depreciation of the Bible....153
49.1 Clarifications about the laws of Moses....153
49.2 The Bible as Holy Scripture is the Divine Word....154
49.3 Fulfilled prophecies are related by the books of John Urquhart....154
CHAPTER 50....156
God's way of expression is as a Father speaking to His children....156
CHAPTER 51....157
The sensual-material man cancels the Divine in himself....157
CHAPTER 52....158
The history of the Jewish (Hebrew) people....158
CHAPTER 53....159
About the origin of Palestine....159
53.1 Today’s crucifixion of Christ....160
CHAPTER 54....161
False prophets are clairvoyants of falsehood....161
54.1 144,000 Jews incarnate as Christians....161
CHAPTER 55....162
Salvation comes from the Jews....162
55.1 The house of David reincarnated....162
55.2 A fulfillment of the Bible in Zechariah....163
55.3 Joel's prophecy for the time of Christ's return....164
55.4 The spiritual correspondences of the Bible understandable only to those who are called....164
55.5 Delitzsch's big mistake....166
55.6 Who was the cherub of Babylon....167
CHAPTER 56....169

The meaning of Solomon's Song of Songs....169
56.1 The sensible chicken and the false hens....171
56.2 The future destiny of the great men who deny Christ....171
CHAPTER 57....173
The Bible is a spiritual Light from God....173
57.1 Scholarly Science and God's Wisdom....173
57.2 The Jews were initially Elohists and only later became Jehovists....174
57.3 Spiritual darkness as punishment for the critics of God's Word....175
57.4 Christians according to the letter of the Bible....175
FOOTNOTES....176